

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

---

*FORM S-3  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933*

---

**SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
(Exact Name Of Registrant As Specified In Its Charter)

---

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

---

**85-3899721**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**777 W 41st St.; Suite 401  
Miami Beach, FL 33140  
Telephone: (305)-845-2813**  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

---

**Samuel J. Reich  
Chief Executive Officer  
SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.  
777 W 41<sup>st</sup> St., Suite 401  
Miami Beach, Florida 33140  
(305)-845-2813**  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

---

*Copies to:*  
**Brian Lee, Esq.  
Ilan Katz, Esq.  
Dentons US LLP  
1221 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10020  
(212) 768-6700**

---

---

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: From time to time or at one time after this registration statement becomes effective in light of market conditions and other factors.**

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		Emerging growth company	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 7(a)(2)(B) of the Securities Act.

---

**The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

**Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the securities being registered hereunder include \$50,000,000 of unsold securities which remain unsold as of the date hereof (the Unsold Securities) previously registered by the registrant's registration on Form S-3 (File No. 333-271768) which was initially filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 9, 2023 and declared effective on May 17, 2023 (the Prior Registration Statement). The aggregate filing fee paid in connection with such Unsold Securities was \$5,510. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, (i) the registration fee applicable to the Unsold Securities is being carried forward to this registration statement and will continue to be applied to the Unsold Securities and (ii) the offering of the Unsold Securities registered on the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this registration statement. If, after the filing date hereof and prior to the effectiveness of this Registration Statement, the registrant sells any Unsold Securities pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement, the registrant will identify in a pre-effective amendment to this registration statement the updated amount of Unsold Securities from the Prior Registration Statement to be included in this registration statement pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), and the updated amount of new securities to be registered on this Registration Statement.**

---

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

This registration statement contains two prospectuses:

- a base prospectus (the “Base Prospectus”), which covers the offering, issuance and sale by us of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$300,000,000 of shares of our common stock and preferred stock, various series of debt securities and/or warrants to purchase any of such securities. We may also issue units comprised of one or more shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, debt securities, warrants and/or rights in any combination. We may also offer common stock or preferred stock upon conversion of debt securities, common stock upon conversion of preferred stock, or common stock, preferred stock or debt securities upon the exercise of warrants; and
- a prospectus (the “ATM Prospectus”) for an “at the market offering” by us of up to \$75,000,000 of our common stock that may be offered and sold under a sales agreement (the “Sales Agreement”) between us and UBS Securities LLC as agent. The common stock that may be offered and sold by us under the ATM Prospectus is included in the \$300,000,000 of securities that may be offered and sold by us under the Base Prospectus. Upon termination of the “at the market offering,” any portion of the \$75,000,000 included in the ATM Prospectus that is not sold pursuant thereto will be available for sale in other offerings pursuant to the Base Prospectus.

The Base Prospectus immediately follows this explanatory note. The ATM Prospectus immediately follows the Base Prospectus.

---

---

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. The Registrant may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where an offer or sale is not permitted.**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED DECEMBER 29, 2025**

**PROSPECTUS**

**\$300,000,000**



**Common Stock  
Preferred Stock  
Debt Securities  
Warrants  
Rights  
Units**

---

From time to time, we may offer and sell up to an aggregate of \$300,000,000 of any combination of the securities described in this prospectus, either individually or in combination. We may also offer common stock or preferred stock upon conversion of debt securities, common stock upon conversion of preferred stock, or common stock, preferred stock or debt securities upon the exercise of warrants. We may also issue units comprised of one or more shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, debt securities, warrants and/or rights in any combination.

When we decide to sell particular securities, we will provide you with the specific terms and the offering price of the securities we are then offering in one or more prospectus supplements to this prospectus. The prospectus supplement may add to, change or update information contained in this prospectus. The prospectus supplement may also contain important information about U.S. federal income tax consequences. You should carefully read this prospectus, together with any prospectus supplements and information incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplements, before you decide to invest. **This prospectus may not be used to offer or sell any securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.**

Our common stock is quoted on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the trading symbol "SABS." Any common stock sold pursuant to this prospectus or any prospectus supplement will be listed on that exchange, subject to official notice of issuance. Each prospectus supplement to this prospectus will contain information, where applicable, as to any other listing on any national securities exchange of the securities covered by the prospectus supplement. On December 26, 2025, the last reported sale price of our common stock was \$3.78 per share.

We may offer and sell the securities described in this prospectus to or through one or more underwriters, dealers or agents, or directly to purchasers on an immediate, continuous or delayed basis. The names of any underwriters, dealers or agents involved in the sale of any securities, the specific manner in which they may be offered and any applicable commissions or discounts will be set forth in an accompanying prospectus supplement covering the sales of those securities.

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended the "Securities Act") and a "smaller reporting company" as defined under Rule 405 of the Securities Act, and as such, we have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements. See "Prospectus

---

Summary— Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Smaller Reporting Company” on page 3 of this prospectus

**Investing in our securities involves significant risks. We strongly recommend that you read carefully the risks we describe in this prospectus and in any accompanying prospectus supplement, as well as the risk factors that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus from our filings made with the Securities and Exchange Commission. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page 7 of this prospectus.**

We may sell the securities directly or to or through underwriters or dealers, and also to other purchasers or through agents. The names of any underwriters or agents that are included in a sale of securities to you, and any applicable commissions or discounts, will be stated in an accompanying prospectus supplement.

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2025

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	1
<a href="#">TRADEMARKS</a>	1
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</a>	2
<a href="#">SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	5
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	7
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	8
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK WE MAY OFFER</a>	9
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER</a>	13
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS WE MAY OFFER</a>	20
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS WE MAY OFFER</a>	22
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF UNITS WE MAY OFFER</a>	23
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	25
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	26
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	26
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	26
<a href="#">INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</a>	28

---

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may, from time to time, offer and sell common stock, preferred stock, debt securities, warrants for debt and equity securities, rights to purchase common stock, preferred stock, or warrants in one or more series, and units consisting of the foregoing in one or more transactions.

This prospectus only provides you with a general description of the securities we may sell in these transactions. Each time we sell any securities under this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. The prospectus supplement also may add, update or change information contained in this prospectus. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you that may contain material information relating to these offerings. This prospectus does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement we filed with the SEC. For further information about us or the securities offered hereby, you should carefully read this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectuses, the information and documents incorporated herein by reference and the additional information under the heading “Where You Can Find Additional Information” before making an investment decision.

The exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part contain the full text of certain contracts and other important documents we have summarized in this prospectus. Because these summaries may not contain all the information that you may find important in deciding whether to purchase the securities we may offer, you should review the full text of these documents. The registration statement and the exhibits can be obtained from the SEC as indicated under the heading “Where You Can Find Additional Information” below.

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectuses that we may authorize to be provided to you. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. This prospectus and the accompanying supplement to this prospectus are not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information appearing in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, as well as information we have previously filed with the SEC and incorporated by reference, is accurate only as of the date on the cover of those documents. If any statement in one of these documents is inconsistent with a statement in another document having a later date—for example, a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus—the statement in the document having the later date modifies or supersedes the earlier statement as our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since the earlier dates.

This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of any of these securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement. To the extent there are inconsistencies between any prospectus supplement, this prospectus and/or any documents incorporated by reference, the document with the most recent date will control.

In this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, unless the context suggests otherwise, references to “SAB Biotherapeutics,” “SAB,” the “Company,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.

## TRADEMARKS

We and our subsidiaries own or have rights to trademarks, trade names and service marks that they use in connection with the operation of their business. In addition, their names, logos and website names and addresses are their trademarks or service marks. Other trademarks, trade names and service marks appearing in this prospectus are the property of their respective owners. Solely for convenience, in some cases, the trademarks, trade names and service marks referred to in this prospectus are listed without the applicable ®, ™ and SM symbols, but they will assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, their rights to these trademarks, trade names and service marks.

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights selected information appearing elsewhere in this prospectus, or incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and does not contain all of the information that you should consider in making your investment decision. You should carefully read this entire prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any free writing prospectus, including the risks of investing in our securities discussed under the heading “Risk Factors” on page 7 of this prospectus and contained in our filings made with the SEC and any applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, and under similar headings in the other documents that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus.*

### **Business Overview**

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on developing multi-specific, high-potency, human immunoglobulin G (“hIgGs”), without the need for human donors or convalescent plasma, to treat and prevent autoimmune disorders. Our programs are based on mechanisms of action that have achieved proof-of-concept in clinical trials in indications with significant unmet medical needs. We are focused on developing product candidates for disease targets where a differentiated approach has the greatest potential to be either first-in-class against novel targets or best-in-class against complex targets to treat diseases, including type 1 diabetes (“T1D”) and other autoimmune disorders. Our internally discovered antibodies are multi-specific, meaning they are comprised of multiple hIgG and can bind to multiple sites on targeted immunogens, making them ideally suited to address the complexities associated with many immune-mediated disorders. Our proprietary platform holds the potential to generate additional novel therapeutic candidates to expand our pipeline, utilizing the human immune response to generate the optimal repertoire of hIgG for drug targets of interest. We believe it is the only technology capable of producing disease-targeted, hIgG in large quantities without the need for human plasma donors. We have optimized genetic engineering in the development of transchromosomal cattle, or Tc Bovine, which produce hIgG. Our engineering of our production platform drives IgG1 production across our pipeline. In addition, this differentiated approach using polyclonal antibodies has no biosimilar pathway, which provides a significant barrier to competitive polyclonal approaches.

### ***SAB-142: Our Lead Product Candidate***

Our wholly owned lead product candidate, SAB-142 is a human anti-thymocyte globulin (“hATG”) focused on preventing or delaying the progression of Stage 3 T1D. SAB-142 is a first-in-class, multi-target hATG treatment designed to provide superior efficacy and safety in delaying the onset or progression of T1D. SAB-142 is expected to reduce autoimmune  $\beta$ -cell destruction and delay progression or onset of T1D in patients with Stage 3 or Stage 2 T1D, respectively. The mechanism of action of SAB-142 has been clinically validated in numerous clinical trials with a rabbit anti-thymocyte globulin (“rATG”), and rATG has demonstrated in multiple clinical trials the ability to slow disease progression in patients with new or recent onset of Stage 3 T1D. In addition, data from more than 700 human subjects treated with antibodies produced by our platform support the expectation of a zero-serum sickness rate and a zero incidence of neutralizing anti-drug antibodies (“ADA”) within the upcoming SAB-142 clinical trials.

We received an Investigational New Drug (“IND”) clearance from the FDA in May 2024 and announced positive topline data from our Phase 1 clinical trial of SAB-142 in January 2025. We are advancing SAB-142 into a Phase 2b clinical trial called the SAFEGUARD study. On May 29, 2025, the Company held a constructive Type B meeting with the FDA. The meeting followed positive topline data from a Phase 1 single-ascending dose trial in healthy volunteers for SAB-142. The primary discussion centered on questions related to all aspects of SAB-142’s Phase 2b SAFEGUARD clinical trial design and chemistry, manufacturing, and controls processes. The FDA provided clear, constructive, and actionable guidance during the discussion leading to alignment on the design and advancement of our Phase 2b SAFEGUARD study. SAB confirmed its intent with the FDA to utilize the data from this study as supportive evidence for future regulatory approval.

### ***Other Immunology Indications***

T- and B-cells are multifunctional lymphocytes whose dysregulation was shown to have a central role in the pathogenesis of more than 80 autoimmune diseases, including T1D, systemic lupus erythematosus (“SLE”), rheumatoid arthritis (“RA”), multiple sclerosis (“MS”) and celiac disease. The therapeutic success to date of lymphocyte-mediating therapies in variety of autoimmune diseases and our *in vivo* and *in vitro* pre-clinical and Phase 1 work from SAB-142 in T1D will support direct progression into Phase 2 clinical trials in other autoimmune indications.

Since the commencement of our operations, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to research and development activities, organizing and staffing our company, business planning, raising capital, establishing and maintaining our intellectual property portfolio, conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials and providing general and administrative support for these operations.

### **Corporate Information**

We were incorporated in the State of Delaware on November 12, 2020, as a special purpose acquisition company under the name Big Cypress Acquisition Corp. (“BCYP”). On January 14, 2021, BCYP completed its initial public offering. On October 22, 2021, BCYP consummated a business combination with SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. (the “Business Combination”), which changed its name to SAB Sciences, Inc. In connection with the closing of the business combination, BCYP changed its name to SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. and SAB Sciences, Inc. became a subsidiary of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.

Our principal executive offices are located at 777 W 41st St., Suite 401 Miami Beach, Florida 33140, and our telephone number is (305)-845-2813. Our website is located at <https://www.sab.bio>. We do not incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information on, or accessible through, our website. Our common stock trades on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SABS”.

### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Smaller Reporting Company**

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, and therefore we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various public company reporting requirements, including not being required to have our internal control over financial reporting audited by our independent registered public accounting firm pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this prospectus, our periodic reports and our proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates equals or exceeds \$700 million as of the end of that year’s second fiscal quarter, (ii) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenue of \$1.235 billion or more during such fiscal year (as indexed for inflation), (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt in the prior three-year period or (iv) December 31, 2026.

We are also a “smaller reporting company” as defined under the Securities Act and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). We may continue to be a smaller reporting company so long as either (i) the market value of shares of our common stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$250 million or (ii) our annual revenue was less than \$100 million during the most recently completed fiscal year and the market value of shares of our common stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$700 million. If we are a smaller reporting company at the time we cease to be an emerging growth company, we may continue to rely on exemptions from certain disclosure requirements that are available to smaller reporting companies. Specifically, as a smaller reporting company, we may choose to present only the two most recent fiscal years of audited financial statements in our Annual Report on Form 10-K and have reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation, and, similar to emerging growth companies, if we are a smaller reporting company under the requirements of (ii) above, we would not be required to obtain an attestation report on internal control over financial reporting issued by our independent registered public accounting firm.

### **Securities We May Offer Under This Prospectus**

We may offer shares of our common stock and preferred stock, various series of debt securities and/or warrants to purchase any of such securities, either individually or in combination, up to a total dollar amount of \$300,000,000, from time to time under this prospectus, together with the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of any offering. We may also offer common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities upon the exercise of warrants, and we may offer common stock or preferred stock upon the conversion of preferred stock or debt securities. This prospectus provides you with a general description of the securities we may offer. Each time we offer a type or series of securities under this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the securities, including, to the extent applicable:

- designation or classification;
- aggregate principal amount or aggregate offering price;
- maturity date, if applicable;
- original issue discount, if any;
- rates and times of payment of interest or dividends, if any;
- redemption, conversion, exercise, exchange or sinking fund terms, if any;
- conversion or exchange prices or rates, if any, and, if applicable, any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the conversion or exchange prices or rates and in the securities or other property receivable upon conversion or exchange;
- ranking;
- restrictive covenants, if any;
- voting or other rights, if any;
- material or special U.S. federal income tax considerations, if any.

The applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you may also add, update or change any of the information contained in this prospectus or in the documents we have incorporated by reference. However, no prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus will offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and certain information incorporated herein by reference contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. The statements contained in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Forward-looking statements are often identified by the use of words such as, but not limited to, “anticipate,” “believe,” “can,” “continue,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “project,” “seek,” “should,” “strategy,” “target,” “will,” “would” and similar expressions or variations intended to identify forward-looking statements. These statements are based on the beliefs and assumptions of our management based on information currently available to management. Such forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and other important factors that could cause actual results and the timing of certain events to differ materially from future results expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements.

Factors that might cause these differences include the following:

- the success, cost and timing of our product development activities and clinical trials, including statements regarding our plans for clinical development of our product candidates, the initiation and completion of clinical trials and related preparatory work and the expected timing of the availability of results of clinical trials;
- our ability to recruit and enroll suitable patients in our clinical trials;
- the potential indications, attributes and benefits of our product candidates;
- our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval for our product candidates, and any related restrictions, limitations or warnings in the label of an approved product candidate;
- our ability to obtain funding for our operations, including funding necessary to complete further development, approval and, if approved, commercialization of our product candidates;
- the period over which we anticipate our existing cash and cash equivalents will be sufficient to fund our operating expense and capital expenditure requirements;
- the potential for our business development efforts to maximize the potential value of our portfolio;
- our ability to identify, in-license or acquire additional product candidates;
- our ability to compete with other companies currently marketing or engaged in the development of treatments for the indications that we are pursuing for our product candidates;
- our expectations regarding our ability to obtain and maintain intellectual property protection for our product candidates and the duration of such protection;
- our ability to contract with and rely on third parties to assist in conducting our clinical trials and manufacturing our product candidates;
- our manufacturing capabilities, third-party contractor capabilities and strategy;
- our plans related to manufacturing, supply and other collaborative agreements;
- the size and growth potential of the markets for our product candidates, and our ability to serve those markets, either alone or in partnership with others;
- the rate and degree of market acceptance of our product candidates, if approved;
- the pricing and reimbursement of our product candidates, if approved;
- regulatory developments in the United States and foreign countries;
- the impact of laws, regulations, accounting standards, regulatory requirements, judicial decisions and guidance issued by authoritative bodies;

- our ability to attract and retain key scientific, medical, commercial or management personnel;
- our estimates regarding expenses, future revenue, capital requirements and needs for additional financing;
- our financial performance;
- our ability to maintain our listing on The Nasdaq Capital Market; and
- our ability to continue as a going concern.

## **RISK FACTORS**

Before you invest in any of the company's securities, in addition to the other information in this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, you should carefully consider (i) the risk factors contained in the Company's most recent annual report on Form 10-K, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, (ii) all of the other information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, and (iii) the applicable prospectus supplement, as the same may be updated from time to time by the Company's future filings under the Exchange Act.

The risks and uncertainties described herein are not the only ones facing the Company. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to the Company or that the Company currently deems immaterial may also impair its business or operations. Any adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition or operating results could result in a decline in the value of the securities and the loss of all or part of your investment. The prospectus supplement applicable to each series of securities the Company offers may contain a discussion of additional risks applicable to an investment in the Company and the securities the Company is offering under that prospectus supplement.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will use the net proceeds from the sale of securities offered by this prospectus for development and commercialization of product candidates, working capital, and general corporate purposes. In addition, we believe opportunities may exist from time to time to expand our current business through acquisitions or in-licenses of, or investments in, complementary companies, medicines, intellectual property or technologies. While we have no current agreements or commitments for any specific acquisitions, in-licenses or investments at this time, we may use a portion of the net proceeds for these purposes. As of the date of this prospectus, we have not identified any specific and material proposed uses of the anticipated proceeds.

Our expected use of net proceeds from the sale of any securities offered pursuant to the applicable prospectus supplement for such offering will vary depending on our then current intentions based upon our plans and business condition. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of any offering or the amounts that we will actually spend on any specific uses set forth above. The amounts and timing of our actual use of the net proceeds will vary depending on numerous factors, including the factors described under or referenced under the heading “Risk Factors” in this prospectus. As a result, unless otherwise specified in the prospectus supplement, our management will have broad discretion in its application of the net proceeds, and investors will be relying on our judgment in such application.

Pending use of net proceeds from the sale of securities offered by this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement for such sale, we may invest in short-term and intermediate-term interest-bearing obligations, investment-grade instruments, certificates of deposit or direct or guaranteed obligations of the U.S. government.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK WE MAY OFFER

*The following description summarizes important terms of our capital stock. For a complete description, you should refer to our certificate of incorporation, as amended, and bylaws, which are incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, as well as the relevant portions of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the "DGCL").*

### **General**

Our authorized capital stock consists of 800,000,000 shares of common stock, \$0.0001 par value per share, and 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, \$0.0001 par value per share.

The following description of our common stock and preferred stock, together with the additional information included in any applicable prospectus supplements or related free writing prospectuses, summarizes the material terms and provisions of these types of securities, but it is not complete. For the complete terms of our common stock and preferred stock, please refer to our certificate of incorporation, as amended, and our bylaws that are incorporated by reference into the registration statement which includes this prospectus and, with respect to preferred stock, any certificate of designation that we may file with the SEC for a series of preferred stock we may designate, if any.

We will describe in a prospectus supplement or related free writing prospectuses, the specific terms of any common stock or preferred stock we may offer pursuant to this prospectus. If indicated in a prospectus supplement, the terms of such common stock or preferred stock may differ from the terms described below.

### **Common Stock**

#### *Voting Power*

Except as otherwise required by law or as otherwise provided in any certificate of designation for any series of preferred stock, the holders of common stock possess all voting power for the election of our directors and all other matters requiring stockholder action. Holders of common stock are entitled to one vote per share on matters to be voted on by stockholders.

#### *Dividends*

Holders of common stock will be entitled to receive such dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors in its discretion out of funds legally available therefor. In no event will any stock dividends or stock splits or combinations of stock be declared or made on common stock unless the shares of common stock at the time outstanding are treated equally and identically.

#### *Liquidation, Dissolution and Winding Up*

In the event of our voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution, distribution of assets or winding-up, the holders of the common stock will be entitled to receive an equal amount per share of all of our assets of whatever kind available for distribution to stockholders, after the rights of the holders of the preferred stock have been satisfied.

#### *Preemptive or Other Rights*

Our stockholders have no preemptive or other subscription rights and there are no sinking fund or redemption provisions applicable to common stock.

#### *Election of Directors*

Our board of directors is divided into three classes, Class I, Class II and Class III, with only one class of directors being elected in each year and each class serving a three-year term, except with respect to the election of directors at

the special meeting held in connection with the Business Combination, Class I directors are elected to an initial one-year term (and three-year terms subsequently), the Class II directors are elected to an initial two-year term (and three-year terms subsequently) and the Class III directors are elected to an initial three-year term (and three-year terms subsequently). There is no cumulative voting with respect to the election of directors, with the result that the holders of more than 50% of the shares voted for the election of directors can elect all of the directors.

### **Preferred Stock**

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that shares of preferred stock may be issued from time to time in one or more series. Our board of directors is authorized to fix the voting rights, if any, designations, powers and preferences, the relative, participating, optional or other special rights, and any qualifications, limitations and restrictions thereof, applicable to the shares of each series of preferred stock. The Board is able to, without stockholder approval, issue preferred stock with voting and other rights that could adversely affect the voting power and other rights of the holders of common stock and could have anti-takeover effects. The ability of our board of directors to issue preferred stock without stockholder approval could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change of control of the Company or the removal of existing management.

As of the date hereof, we have 29,091 shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Series A Preferred Stock”), issued and outstanding and 638,558 shares of Series B Convertible Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Series B Preferred Stock”), issued and outstanding. The Series A Preferred Stock and Series B Preferred Stock are not being offered herein.

### **Certain Anti-Takeover Provisions of Delaware Law**

#### *Special Meetings of Stockholders*

Our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by a majority vote of the board of directors, by the Chairperson of the board of directors, or by the chief executive officer.

#### *Advance Notice Requirements for Stockholder Proposals and Director Nominations*

Our Amended and Restated Bylaws provide that stockholders seeking to bring business before our annual meeting of stockholders, or to nominate candidates for election as directors at our annual meeting of stockholders, must provide timely notice of their intent in writing. To be timely under our Amended and Restated Bylaws, a stockholder’s notice will need to be received by the company secretary at our principal executive offices not later than the close of business on the 90th day nor earlier than the open of business on the 120th day prior to the first anniversary of the preceding year’s annual meeting. Pursuant to Rule 14a-8 of the Exchange Act, proposals seeking inclusion in our annual proxy statement must comply with the notice periods contained therein. Our Amended and Restated Bylaws also specify certain requirements as to the form and content of a stockholders’ meeting. These provisions may preclude our stockholders from bringing matters before our annual meeting of stockholders or from making nominations for directors at our annual meeting of stockholders.

#### *Authorized but Unissued Shares*

Our authorized but unissued common stock and preferred stock are available for future issuances without stockholder approval and could be utilized for a variety of corporate purposes, including future offerings to raise additional capital, acquisitions and employee benefit plans. The existence of authorized but unissued and unreserved common stock and preferred stock could render more difficult or discourage an attempt to obtain control of us by means of a proxy contest, tender offer, merger or otherwise.

#### *Exclusive Forum Selection*

The Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware (subject to certain limited exceptions) shall be the sole and exclusive forum for any of the following claims (i) any derivative claim or cause of action brought on

our behalf, (ii) any claim or cause of action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee of the Company to the Company or to the Company's stockholders, (iii) any claim or cause of action against us, our directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL, the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation or the Amended and Restated Bylaws, and (iv) any claim or cause of action against the Company or any director, officer or other employee of the Company governed by the internal affairs doctrine, in all cases to the fullest extent permitted by law and subject to the court's having personal jurisdiction over the indispensable parties named as defendants. Any person or entity holding, owning or otherwise acquiring any interest in shares of capital stock of the Company shall be deemed to have notice of and to have consented to such provisions. If the claim is brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder asserting such claim will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder's counsel, except with respect to claims: (A) as to which the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware determines that there is an indispensable party not subject to the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery (and the indispensable party does not consent to personal jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery within ten days following such determination), (B) which is vested in the exclusive jurisdiction of a court or forum other than the Court of Chancery, (C) for which the Court of Chancery does not have subject matter jurisdiction, or (D) any action arising under the Securities Act.

Although we believe these provisions benefit us by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which they apply, a court may determine that these provisions are unenforceable, and to the extent they are enforceable, the provisions may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our directors and officers, although our stockholders will not be deemed to have waived our compliance with federal securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder. Additionally, we cannot be certain that a court will decide that these provisions are either applicable or enforceable, and if a court were to find the choice of forum provisions contained in our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could harm our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the exclusive forum provision will be applicable to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law. Section 27 of the Exchange Act creates exclusive federal jurisdiction over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. As a result, the exclusive forum provision will not apply to suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction. Furthermore, Section 22 of the Securities Act creates concurrent jurisdiction for federal and state courts over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. Accordingly, both state and federal courts have jurisdiction to entertain such claims. To prevent having to litigate claims in multiple jurisdictions and the threat of inconsistent or contrary rulings by different courts, among other considerations, the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation provides that the federal district courts of the United States will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act.

#### *Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law*

We are subject to provisions of Section 203 of the DGCL regulating corporate takeovers under our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation. This statute prevents certain Delaware corporations, under certain circumstances, from engaging in a "business combination" with:

- a stockholder who owns 15% or more of our outstanding voting stock (otherwise known as an "interested stockholder");
- an affiliate of an interested stockholder; or
- an associate of an interested stockholder, for three years following the date that the stockholder became an interested stockholder.

A "business combination" includes a merger or sale of more than 10% of our assets. However, the above provisions of Section 203 do not apply if:

- our board of directors approves the transaction that made the stockholder an "interested stockholder," prior to the date of the transaction

- after the completion of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, that stockholder owned at least 85% of our voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, other than statutorily excluded shares of common stock; or
- on or subsequent to the date of the transaction, our initial business combination is approved by our board of directors and authorized at a meeting of our stockholders, and not by written consent, by an affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the outstanding voting stock not owned by the interested stockholder.

Under certain circumstances, this provision will make it more difficult for a person who would be an “interested stockholder” to effect various business combinations with the Company for a three-year period. This provision may encourage companies interested in acquiring us to negotiate in advance with our board of directors because the stockholder approval requirement would be avoided if our board of directors approves either the business combination or the transaction which results in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder. These provisions also may have the effect of preventing changes in our board of directors and may make it more difficult to accomplish transactions which stockholders may otherwise deem to be in their best interests.

#### **Limitation on Liability and Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

The Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation eliminates directors’ liability for monetary damages to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law. Our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation requires the Company to indemnify and advance expenses to, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, its directors, officers and agents and prohibit any retroactive changes to the rights or protections or increase the liability of any director in effect at the time of the alleged occurrence of any act or omission to act giving rise to liability or indemnification. We believe these provisions in our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation are necessary to attract and retain qualified persons as directors and officers. However, these provisions may discourage stockholders from bringing a lawsuit against our directors for breach of their fiduciary duty. These provisions also may have the effect of reducing the likelihood of derivative litigation against directors and officers, even though such an action, if successful, might otherwise benefit us and our stockholders. Furthermore, a stockholder’s investment may be adversely affected to the extent we pay the costs of settlement and damage awards against directors and officers pursuant to these indemnification provisions.

#### **Transfer Agent**

The transfer agent for our securities is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company. The transfer agent’s address is One State Street Plaza, 30th Floor New York, New York 10004.

## DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER

The following description, together with the additional information we include in any applicable prospectus supplements or free writing prospectuses, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the debt securities that we may offer under this prospectus. We may issue debt securities, in one or more series, as either senior or subordinated debt or as senior or subordinated convertible debt. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any future debt securities we may offer under this prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any debt securities that we may offer in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus. The terms of any debt securities we offer under a prospectus supplement may differ from the terms we describe below. Unless the context requires otherwise, whenever we refer to the “indentures,” we also are referring to any supplemental indentures that specify the terms of a particular series of debt securities.

We will issue any senior debt securities under the senior indenture that we will enter into with the trustee named in the senior indenture. We will issue any subordinated debt securities under the subordinated indenture and any supplemental indentures that we will enter into with the trustee named in the subordinated indenture. We have filed forms of these documents as exhibits to the registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part, and supplemental indentures and forms of debt securities containing the terms of the debt securities being offered will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or will be incorporated by reference from reports that we file with the SEC.

The indentures will be qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the Trust Indenture Act. We use the term “trustee” to refer to either the trustee under the senior indenture or the trustee under the subordinated indenture, as applicable.

The following summaries of material provisions of the senior debt securities, the subordinated debt securities and the indentures are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all of the provisions of the indenture and any supplemental indentures applicable to a particular series of debt securities. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplements and any related free writing prospectuses related to the debt securities that we may offer under this prospectus, as well as the complete indenture that contains the terms of the debt securities. Except as we may otherwise indicate, the terms of the senior indenture and the subordinated indenture are identical.

### General

The terms of each series of debt securities will be established by or pursuant to a resolution of our board of directors and set forth or determined in the manner provided in an officers’ certificate or by a supplemental indenture. Debt securities may be issued in separate series without limitation as to aggregate principal amount. We may specify a maximum aggregate principal amount for the debt securities of any series. We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of debt securities being offered, including:

- the title;
- the principal amount being offered and, if a series, the total amount authorized and the total amount outstanding;
- any limit on the amount that may be issued;
- whether or not we will issue the series of debt securities in global form, and, if so, the terms and who the depository will be;
- the maturity date;
- whether and under what circumstances, if any, we will pay additional amounts on any debt securities held by a person who is not a U.S. person for tax purposes, and whether we can redeem the debt securities if we have to pay such additional amounts;
- the annual interest rate, which may be fixed or variable, or the method for determining the rate and the date interest will begin to accrue, the dates interest will be payable and the regular record dates for interest payment dates or the method for determining such dates;

- whether or not the debt securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- the terms of the subordination of any series of subordinated debt;
- the place where payments will be payable;
- restrictions on transfer, sale or other assignment, if any;
- our right, if any, to defer payment of interest and the maximum length of any such deferral period;
- the date, if any, after which, and the price at which, we may, at our option, redeem the series of debt securities pursuant to any optional or provisional redemption provisions and the terms of those redemption provisions;
- provisions for a sinking fund purchase or other analogous fund, if any, including the date, if any, on which, and the price at which we are obligated, pursuant thereto or otherwise, to redeem, or at the holder's option, to purchase, the series of debt securities and the currency or currency unit in which the debt securities are payable;
- provisions relating to modification of the terms of the security or the rights of the security holder;
- whether the indenture will restrict our ability or the ability of our subsidiaries to:
  - incur additional indebtedness;
  - issue additional securities;
  - create liens;
  - pay dividends or make distributions in respect of our capital stock or the capital stock of our subsidiaries;
  - redeem capital stock;
  - place restrictions on our subsidiaries' ability to pay dividends, make distributions or transfer assets;
  - make investments or other restricted payments;
  - sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of assets;
  - enter into sale-leaseback transactions;
  - engage in transactions with stockholders or affiliates;
  - issue or sell stock of our subsidiaries;
  - effect a consolidation or merger;
- whether the indenture will require us to maintain any interest coverage, fixed charge, cash flow-based, asset-based or other financial ratios;
- information describing any book-entry features;
- the applicability of the provisions in the indenture on discharge;
- whether the debt securities are to be offered at a price such that they will be deemed to be offered at an "original issue discount" as defined in paragraph (a) of Section 1273 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended;
- the denominations in which we will issue the series of debt securities, if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- the currency of payment of debt securities if other than U.S. dollars and the manner of determining the equivalent amount in U.S. dollars; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights or limitations of, or restrictions on, the debt securities, including any additional events of default or covenants provided with respect to the debt securities, and any terms that may be required by us or advisable under applicable laws or regulations.

U.S. federal income tax consequences applicable to debt securities sold at an original issue discount will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. In addition, U.S. federal income tax or other consequences applicable to any debt securities which are denominated in a currency or currency unit other than U.S. dollars may be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

### **Conversion or Exchange Rights**

We will set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms under which a series of debt securities may be convertible into or exchangeable for our common stock, our preferred stock or other securities (including securities of a third party). We will include provisions as to whether conversion or exchange is mandatory, at the option of the holder or at our option. We may include provisions pursuant to which the number of shares of our common stock, our preferred stock or other securities (including securities of a third party) that the holders of the series of debt securities receive would be subject to adjustment.

### **Consolidation, Merger or Sale**

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the indentures will not contain any covenant that restricts our ability to merge or consolidate, or sell, convey, transfer or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of our assets. However, any successor to or acquiror of such assets must assume all of our obligations under the indentures or the debt securities, as appropriate. If the debt securities are convertible into or exchangeable for our other securities or securities of other entities, the person with whom we consolidate or merge or to whom we sell all of our property must make provisions for the conversion of the debt securities into securities that the holders of the debt securities would have received if they had converted the debt securities before the consolidation, merger or sale.

### **Events of Default under the Indenture**

Unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, the following are events of default under the indentures with respect to any series of debt securities that we may issue:

- if we fail to pay interest when due and payable and our failure continues for 90 days and the time for payment has not been extended;
- if we fail to pay the principal, premium or sinking fund payment, if any, when due and payable and the time for payment has not been extended;
- if we fail to observe or perform any other covenant contained in the debt securities or the indentures, other than a covenant specifically relating to another series of debt securities, and our failure continues for 90 days after we receive notice from the trustee or we and the trustee receive notice from the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the applicable series; and
- if specified events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur.

We will describe in each applicable prospectus supplement any additional events of default relating to the relevant series of debt securities. If an event of default with respect to debt securities of any series occurs and is continuing, other than an event of default specified in the last bullet point above, the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series, by notice to us in writing, and to the trustee if notice is given by such holders, may declare the unpaid principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest, if any, due and payable immediately. If an event of default arises due to the occurrence of certain specified bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization events, the unpaid principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest, if any, of each issue of debt securities then outstanding shall be due and payable without any notice or other action on the part of the trustee or any holder.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of an affected series may waive any default or event of default with respect to the series and its consequences, except defaults or events of default regarding payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, unless we have cured the default or event of default in accordance with the indenture. Any such waiver shall cure the default or event of default.

Subject to the terms of the applicable indenture, if an event of default under an indenture shall occur and be continuing, the trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under such indenture at the request or direction of any of the holders of the applicable series of debt securities, unless such holders have offered the trustee reasonable indemnity or security satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense. The holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series will have the right to direct the time,

method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee, with respect to the debt securities of that series, provided that:

- the direction so given by the holders is not in conflict with any law or the applicable indenture; and
- subject to its duties under the Trust Indenture Act, the trustee need not take any action that might involve it in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the holders not involved in the proceeding.

The indentures provide that if an event of default has occurred and is continuing, the trustee will be required in the exercise of its powers to use the degree of care that a prudent person would use in the conduct of its own affairs. The trustee, however, may refuse to follow any direction that conflicts with law or the indenture, or that the trustee determines is unduly prejudicial to the rights of any other holder of the relevant series of debt securities, or that would involve the trustee in personal liability. Prior to taking any action under the indentures, the trustee will be entitled to indemnification against all costs, expenses and liabilities that would be incurred by taking or not taking such action.

A holder of the debt securities of any series will have the right to institute a proceeding under the indentures or to appoint a receiver or trustee, or to seek other remedies only if:

- the holder has given written notice to the trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to that series;
- the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series have made a written request and such holders have offered reasonable indemnity to the trustee or security satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense to be incurred in compliance with instituting the proceeding as trustee; and
- the trustee does not institute the proceeding, and does not receive from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series other conflicting directions within 60 days after the notice, request and offer

These limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by a holder of debt securities if we default in the payment of the principal, premium, if any, or interest on, the debt securities.

We will periodically file statements with the trustee regarding our compliance with specified covenants in the indentures.

The indentures provide that if a default occurs and is continuing and is actually known to a responsible officer of the trustee, the trustee must mail to each holder notice of the default within 45 days after it occurs, unless such default has been cured. Except in the case of a default in the payment of principal or premium of, or interest on, any debt security or certain other defaults specified in an indenture, the trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors, or responsible officers of the trustee, in good faith determine that withholding notice is in the best interests of holders of the relevant series of debt securities.

#### **Modification of Indenture; Waiver**

Subject to the terms of the indenture for any series of debt securities that we may issue, we and the trustee may change an indenture without the consent of any holders with respect to the following specific matters:

- to fix any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency in the indenture;
- to comply with the provisions described above under “Consolidation, Merger or Sale”;
- to comply with any requirements of the SEC in connection with the qualification of any indenture under the Trust Indenture Act;
- to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms or purposes of issue, authentication and delivery of debt securities, as set forth in such indenture;
- to provide for the issuance of, and establish the form and terms and conditions of, the debt securities of any series as provided under “General,” to establish the form of any certifications required to be

furnished pursuant to the terms of the indenture or any series of debt securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of debt securities;

- to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee;
- to provide for uncertificated debt securities in addition to or in place of certificated debt securities and to make all appropriate changes for such purpose;
- to add such new covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions for the protection of the holders, and to make the occurrence, or the occurrence and the continuance, of a default in any such additional covenants, restrictions, conditions or provisions an event of default or to surrender any right or power conferred to us in the indenture; or
- to change anything that does not materially adversely affect the interests of any holder of debt securities of any series in any material respect; provided that any amendment made solely to conform the provisions of the indenture to the corresponding description of the debt securities contained in the applicable prospectus or prospectus supplement shall be deemed not to adversely affect the interests of the holders of such debt securities; provided further, that in connection with any such amendment we will provide the trustee with an officers' certificate certifying that such amendment will not adversely affect the rights or interests of the holders of such debt securities.

In addition, under the indentures, the rights of holders of a series of debt securities may be changed by us and the trustee with the written consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series that is affected. However, unless we provide otherwise in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, we and the trustee may only make the following changes with the consent of each holder of any outstanding debt securities affected:

- extending the fixed maturity of the series of debt securities;
- reducing the principal amount, reducing the rate of or extending the time of payment of interest, or reducing any premium payable upon the redemption of any debt securities;
- reducing the percentage of debt securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any amendment, supplement, modification or waiver;
- changing any of our obligations to pay additional amounts;
- reducing the amount of principal of an original issue discount security or any other note payable upon acceleration of the maturity thereof;
- changing the currency in which any note or any premium or interest is payable;
- impairing the right to enforce any payment on or with respect to any note;
- adversely changing the right to convert or exchange, including decreasing the conversion rate or increasing the conversion price of, such note, if applicable;
- in the case of the subordinated indenture, modifying the subordination provisions in a manner adverse to the holders of the subordinated debt securities;
- if the debt securities are secured, changing the terms and conditions pursuant to which the debt securities are secured in a manner adverse to the holders of the secured debt securities;
- reducing the requirements contained in the applicable indenture for quorum or voting;
- changing any of our obligations to maintain an office or agency in the places and for the purposes required by the indentures; or
- modifying any of the above provisions set forth in this paragraph.

## **Discharge**

Each indenture provides that, subject to the terms of the indenture and any limitation otherwise provided in the prospectus supplement applicable to a particular series of debt securities, we may elect to be discharged from our obligations with respect to one or more series of debt securities, except for specified obligations, including obligations to:

- register the transfer or exchange of debt securities of the series;
- replace stolen, lost or mutilated debt securities of the series;
- maintain paying agencies;
- hold monies for payment in trust;
- recover excess money held by the trustee;
- compensate and indemnify the trustee; and
- appoint any successor trustee.

In order to exercise our rights to be discharged, we must deposit with the trustee money or government obligations sufficient to pay all the principal of, and any premium and interest on, the debt securities of the series on the dates payments are due.

## **Form, Exchange and Transfer**

We will issue the debt securities of each series only in fully registered form without coupons and, unless we otherwise specify in the applicable prospectus supplement, in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof. The indentures provide that we may issue debt securities of a series in temporary or permanent global form and as book-entry securities that will be deposited with, or on behalf of, The Depository Trust Company or another depository named by us and identified in a prospectus supplement with respect to that series.

At the option of the holder, subject to the terms of the indentures and the limitations applicable to global securities described in the applicable prospectus supplement, the holder of the debt securities of any series can exchange the debt securities for other debt securities of the same series, in any authorized denomination and of like tenor and aggregate principal amount.

Subject to the terms of the indentures and the limitations applicable to global securities set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the debt securities may present the debt securities for exchange or for registration of transfer, duly endorsed or with the form of transfer endorsed thereon duly executed if so required by us or the security registrar, at the office of the security registrar or at the office of any transfer agent designated by us for this purpose. Unless otherwise provided in the debt securities that the holder presents for transfer or exchange, we will impose no service charge for any registration of transfer or exchange, but we may require payment of any taxes or other governmental charges.

We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement the security registrar, and any transfer agent in addition to the security registrar, that we initially designate for any debt securities. We may at any time designate additional transfer agents or rescind the designation of any transfer agent or approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of each series.

If we elect to redeem the debt securities of any series, we will not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange any debt securities of that series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of mailing of a notice of redemption of any debt securities that may be selected for redemption and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing; or
- register the transfer of or exchange any debt securities so selected for redemption, in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any debt securities we are redeeming in part.

**Information Concerning the Trustee**

The trustee, other than during the occurrence and continuance of an event of default under an indenture, undertakes to perform only those duties as are specifically set forth in the applicable indenture and is under no obligation to exercise any of the powers given it by the indentures at the request of any holder of debt securities unless it is offered reasonable security and indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that it might incur. However, upon an event of default under an indenture, the trustee must use the same degree of care as a prudent person would exercise or use in the conduct of his or her own affairs.

**Payment and Paying Agents**

Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make payment of the interest on any debt securities on any interest payment date to the person in whose name the debt securities, or one or more predecessor securities, are registered at the close of business on the regular record date for the interest payment.

We will pay principal of and any premium and interest on the debt securities of a particular series at the office of the paying agents designated by us, except that, unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will make interest payments by check that we will mail to the holder or by wire transfer to certain holders. Unless we otherwise indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will designate the corporate trust office of the trustee in the City of New York as our sole paying agent for payments with respect to debt securities of each series. We will name in the applicable prospectus supplement any other paying agents that we initially designate for the debt securities of a particular series. We will maintain a paying agent in each place of payment for the debt securities of a particular series.

All money we pay to a paying agent or the trustee for the payment of the principal of, or any premium or interest on any debt securities that remains unclaimed at the end of two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable will be repaid to us, and the holder of the debt security thereafter may look only to us for payment thereof.

**Governing Law**

The indentures and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable.

**Ranking Debt Securities**

The subordinated debt securities will be unsecured and will be subordinate and junior in priority of payment to certain of our other indebtedness to the extent described in a prospectus supplement. The subordinated indenture does not limit the amount of subordinated debt securities that we may issue. It also does not limit us from issuing any other secured or unsecured debt.

The senior debt securities will be unsecured and will rank equally in right of payment to all our other senior unsecured debt. The senior indenture does not limit the amount of senior debt securities that we may issue. It also does not limit us from issuing any other secured or unsecured debt.

## DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS WE MAY OFFER

We typically issue warrants to purchase shares of our common stock to investors as part of a financing transaction, or in connection with services rendered by placement agents and outside consultants.

We may issue warrants to purchase debt securities, preferred stock, common stock or any combination of the foregoing. We may issue warrants independently or together with any other securities we offer under a prospectus supplement. The warrants may be attached to or separate from the securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between a warrant agent and us. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not have any obligations or relationship of agency or trust for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants. The following outlines some of the general terms and provisions of the warrants that we may issue from time to time. When we issue warrants, we will provide the specific terms of the warrants and the applicable warrant agreement in a prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectuses and such terms may differ from those described below. To the extent the information contained in the prospectus supplement differs from this summary description, you should rely on the information in the prospectus supplement. The following description, and any description of the warrants included in a prospectus supplement, may not be complete and is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to the terms and provisions of the applicable warrant agreement.

### Equity Warrants

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectuses the terms of the preferred stock warrants or common stock warrants being offered, the warrant agreement relating to the preferred stock warrants or common stock warrants and the warrant certificates representing the preferred stock warrants or common stock warrants, including, as applicable:

- the title of the warrants;
- the securities for which the warrants are exercisable;
- the price or prices at which the warrants will be issued;
- if applicable, the number of warrants issued with each share of preferred stock or share of common stock;
- if applicable, the date on and after which the warrants and the related preferred stock or common stock will be separately transferable;
- the date on which the right to exercise the warrants will commence, and the date on which the right will expire;
- the maximum or minimum number of warrants which may be exercised at any time;
- any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price or number of securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- a discussion of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to exercise of the warrants; and
- any other terms of the warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the warrants.

Unless otherwise provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, holders of equity warrants will not be entitled, by virtue of being such holders, to vote, consent, receive dividends, receive notice as stockholders with respect to any meeting of stockholders for the election of our directors or any other matter, or to exercise any rights whatsoever as stockholders.

Except as provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, the exercise price payable and the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchasable upon the exercise of each warrant will be subject to adjustment in certain events, including the issuance of a stock dividend to holders of common stock or preferred stock or a stock split, reverse stock split, combination, subdivision or reclassification of common stock or preferred stock. In lieu of adjusting the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchasable upon exercise of each warrant, we may elect to adjust the number of warrants. Unless otherwise provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, no adjustments in the number of shares purchasable upon exercise of the warrants will be required until all cumulative adjustments require an adjustment of at least 1% thereof. No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of warrants, but we will pay the cash value of any fractional shares otherwise issuable. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, in case of any consolidation, merger, or sale or conveyance of our property as an entirety or substantially as an entirety, the holder of each outstanding warrant will have the right to the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities and property, including cash, receivable by a holder of the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock into which each warrant was exercisable immediately prior to the particular triggering event.

### **Debt Warrants**

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectuses the terms of the debt warrants being offered, the warrant agreement relating to the debt warrants and the debt warrant certificates representing the debt warrants, including, as applicable:

- the title of the debt warrants;
- the aggregate number of the debt warrants;
- the price or prices at which the debt warrants will be issued;
- the designation, aggregate principal amount and terms of the debt securities purchasable upon exercise of the debt warrants, and the procedures and conditions relating to the exercise of the debt warrants;
- the designation and terms of any related debt securities with which the debt warrants are issued, and the number of the debt warrants issued with each security;
- the date, if any, on and after which the debt warrants and the related debt securities will be separately transferable;
- the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of each debt warrant, and the price at which the principal amount of the debt securities may be purchased upon exercise;
- the date on which the right to exercise the debt warrants will commence, and the date on which the right will expire;
- the maximum or minimum number of the debt warrants that may be exercised at any time;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- changes to or adjustments in the exercise price of the debt warrants;
- a discussion of the material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the exercise of the debt warrants; and
- any other terms of the debt warrants and terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exercise of the debt warrants.

As may be permitted under the warrant agreement, holders may exchange debt warrant certificates for new debt warrant certificates of different denominations, and may exercise debt warrants at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectuses. Prior to the exercise of their debt warrants, holders of debt warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon the exercise, and will not be entitled to payments of principal, premium or interest on the securities purchasable upon the exercise, of debt warrants.

## Exercise of Warrants

Each warrant will entitle the holder of the warrant to purchase for cash at the exercise price provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses the principal amount of debt securities or shares of preferred stock or shares of common stock being offered. Holders may exercise warrants at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date provided in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants are void.

Holders may exercise warrants as described in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any free writing prospectuses relating to the warrants being offered. Upon receipt of payment and the warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the applicable warrant agreement and corresponding prospectus supplement or any related free writing prospectuses, we will, as soon as practicable, forward the debt securities, shares of preferred stock or shares of common stock purchasable upon the exercise of the warrant. If less than all of the warrants represented by the warrant certificate are exercised, we will issue a new warrant certificate for the remaining warrants.

## DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS WE MAY OFFER

We may issue rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock, or warrants in one or more series. Rights may be issued independently or together with any other offered security and may or may not be transferable by the person purchasing or receiving the subscription rights. In connection with any rights offering to our stockholders, we may enter into a standby underwriting arrangement with one or more underwriters pursuant to which the underwriters will purchase any of the offered securities remaining unsubscribed after the expiration of the rights offering. In connection with a rights offering to our stockholders, we will distribute certificates evidencing the rights and an applicable prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving rights in the rights offering. An applicable prospectus supplement will describe the following terms of rights in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the title of the rights;
- the securities for which the rights are exercisable;
- the exercise price for the rights;
- the date of determining the security holders entitled to the rights distribution;
- the number of the rights issued to each security holder;
- the extent to which the rights are transferable;
- if applicable, a discussion of the material United States federal income tax considerations applicable to the issuance or exercise of the rights;
- the date on which the right to exercise the rights shall commence, and the date on which the rights shall expire (subject to any extension);
- the conditions to completion of the rights offering;
- any provisions for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price or number of securities issuable upon exercise of the rights;
- the extent to which the rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or other purchase arrangement that we may enter into in connection with the rights offering; and
- any other terms of the rights, including terms, procedures and limits relating to the exchange or exercise of the rights.

Each right will entitle the holder to purchase an amount of securities for cash, at the exercise price. Rights may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date of the rights. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised rights will become void. The manner in which rights may be exercised will be described in an applicable prospectus supplement. We may, but are not required to, permit the exercise of rights through the delivery of a notice of guaranteed delivery from a bank, a trust company, or a Nasdaq member guaranteeing delivery of (i) payment of the exercise price for the securities for which the rights are being exercised, and (ii) a properly completed and executed rights certificate. The notice of guaranteed delivery must be received by the rights agent before the expiration of the rights, and the rights agent will not honor a notice of guaranteed delivery unless a properly completed and executed rights certificate and full payment for the securities being purchased are received by the rights agent by the close of business on the third business day after the expiration time of the rights. Upon receipt of payment and the proper completion and due execution of the rights certificate at the designated office of the rights agent or any other office indicated in an applicable prospectus supplement, we or the transfer agent will forward, as soon as practicable, the securities purchased upon the exercise of the rights. We may determine to offer any unsubscribed offered securities directly to persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of the methods, including pursuant to standby underwriting arrangements, as set forth in an applicable prospectus supplement.

## DESCRIPTION OF UNITS WE MAY OFFER

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable prospectus supplements and free writing prospectuses, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the units that we may offer under this prospectus. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any units that we may offer under this prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of units in more detail in the applicable prospectus supplement. The terms of any units offered under a prospectus supplement may differ from the terms described below. However, no prospectus supplement will fundamentally change the terms that are set forth in this prospectus or offer a security that is not registered and described in this prospectus at the time of its effectiveness.

We will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the form of unit agreement that describes the terms of the series of units we are offering, and any supplemental agreements, before the issuance of the related series of units. The following summaries of material terms and provisions of the units are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the unit agreement and any supplemental agreements applicable to a particular series of units. We urge you to read the applicable prospectus supplements related to the particular series of units that we sell under this prospectus, as well as the complete unit agreement and any supplemental agreements that contain the terms of the units.

### General

We may issue units comprised of one or more shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, debt securities, warrants and/or rights in any combination. Each unit will be issued so that the holder of the unit is also the holder of each security included in the unit. Thus, the holder of a unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security. The unit agreement under which a unit is issued may provide that the securities included in the unit may not be held or transferred separately, at any time or at any time before a specified date.

We will describe in the applicable prospectus supplement the terms of the series of units, including:

- the designation and terms of the units and of the securities comprising the units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;
- any provisions of the governing unit agreement that differ from those described below; and
- any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the units or of the securities comprising the units.

The provisions described in this section, as well as those described under “Description of Capital Stock,” “Description of Preferred Stock,” “Description of Debt Securities,” “Description of Warrants” and “Description of

Rights” will apply to each unit and to any common stock, preferred stock, debt security or warrant included in each unit, respectively.

**Issuance in Series**

We may issue units in such amounts and in numerous distinct series as we determine.

**Enforceability of Rights by Holders of Units**

Each unit agent will act solely as our agent under the applicable unit agreement and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holder of any unit. A single bank or trust company may act as unit agent for more than one series of units. A unit agent will have no duty or responsibility in case of any default by us under the applicable unit agreement or unit, including any duty or responsibility to initiate any proceedings at law or otherwise, or to make any demand upon us. Any holder of a unit may, without the consent of the related unit agent or the holder of any other unit, enforce by appropriate legal action its rights as holder under any security included in the unit.

We, the unit agents and any of their agents may treat the registered holder of any unit certificate as an absolute owner of the units evidenced by that certificate for any purpose and as the person entitled to exercise the rights attaching to the units so registered, despite any notice to the contrary.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may sell the securities being offered by us in this prospectus pursuant to underwritten public offerings, negotiated transactions, block trades, in transactions as further described below, any combination of such methods or any other methods permitted pursuant to applicable law. We may sell the securities to or through underwriters, dealers, agents or directly to one or more purchasers. We and our agents reserve the right to accept and to reject, in whole or in part, any proposed purchase of securities. A prospectus supplement or post-effective amendment, which we will file each time we effect an offering of any securities, will provide the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents, if any, involved in the sale of such securities, and any applicable fees, commissions, or discounts to which such persons shall be entitled to in connection with such offering.

We and our agents, dealers and underwriters, as applicable, may sell the securities being offered by us in this prospectus from time to time in one or more transactions at:

- a fixed price or prices, which may be changed;
- market prices prevailing at the time of sale;
- prices related to such prevailing market prices;
- varying prices determined at the time of sale; or
- negotiated prices.

We may determine the price or other terms of the securities offered under this prospectus by use of an electronic auction. We will describe how any auction will determine the price or any other terms, how potential investors may participate in the auction and the nature of the underwriters' obligations, in the applicable prospectus supplement or amendment.

We may solicit directly offers to purchase securities. We may also designate agents from time to time to solicit offers to purchase securities. Any agent that we designate, who may be deemed to be an underwriter as such term is defined in the Securities Act, may then resell such securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by such agent at the time of resale.

We may engage in at the market offerings of the Company's common stock as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act. An at the market offering is an offering of our common stock at other than a fixed price, and is conducted to or through a market maker. We shall name any underwriter or agent that the Company engages for an at the market offering in a post-effective amendment to the registration statement containing this prospectus. In the related prospectus supplement, we shall also describe any additional details of the Company's arrangement with such underwriter or agent, including commissions or fees paid or discounts offered by the Company, and whether such underwriter is acting as principal or agent.

If we use underwriters to sell securities, we will enter into an underwriting agreement with the underwriters at the time of the sale to them, which agreement shall be filed as an exhibit to the related prospectus supplement. Underwriters may also receive commissions from purchasers of the securities. Underwriters may also use dealers to sell securities. In such an event, the dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents.

Under agreements that they may enter into with us, underwriters, dealers, agents and other persons may be entitled to (i) indemnification by the Company against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act or (ii) contribution with respect to payments which they may be required to make in respect of such liabilities. Underwriters and agents may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we may authorize underwriters, dealers or other persons to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase the securities offered by us under this prospectus pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date or dates. The obligations of any purchaser under these contracts will be subject only to those conditions described in the applicable prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth the price to be paid for securities pursuant to those contracts and the commissions payable for solicitation of the contracts.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing and syndicate short covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M of the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions involve bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Syndicate short covering transactions involve purchases of securities in the open market after the distribution has been completed in order to cover syndicate short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim selling concessions from dealers when the securities originally sold by such dealers are purchased in covering transactions to cover syndicate short positions. These transactions may cause the price of the securities sold in an offering to be higher than it would otherwise be. These transactions, if commenced, may be discontinued by the underwriters at any time without notice.

Our common stock is quoted on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the trading symbol "SABS" The other securities are not listed on any securities exchange or other stock market and, unless the Company states otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the Company does not intend to apply for listing of the other securities on any securities exchange or other stock market. Any underwriters to whom we sell securities for public offering and sale may make a market in the securities that they purchase, but the underwriters will not be obligated to do so and may discontinue any market making at any time without notice. Accordingly, the Company gives you no assurance as to the development or liquidity of any trading market for the securities.

The anticipated date of delivery of the securities offered hereby will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to each offering.

In order to comply with certain state securities laws, if applicable, the securities may be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers. In certain states, the securities may not be sold unless the securities have been registered or qualified for sale in such state or an exemption from regulation or qualification is available and is complied with. Sales of securities must also be made by the Company in compliance with all other applicable state securities laws and regulations.

We shall pay all expenses of the registration of the securities.

#### **EXPERTS**

The consolidated financial statements of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. as of and for the years ended December 31, 2024 and 2023, included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2024, have been audited by EisnerAmper LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report (which report includes an explanatory paragraph regarding the existence of substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern), and have been incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

#### **LEGAL MATTERS**

If and when the securities being registered hereunder are issued, the validity of such issuance will be passed upon for the Company by Dentons US LLP, New York, New York.

#### **WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION**

This prospectus is part of the registration statement on Form S-3 we filed with the SEC under the Securities Act and does not contain all the information set forth in the registration statement. Whenever a reference is made in this prospectus to any of our contracts, agreements or other documents, the reference may not be complete and you should refer to the exhibits that are a part of the registration statement or the exhibits to the reports or other documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus for a copy of such contract, agreement or other document. Because we are subject to the information and reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, we file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. Our SEC filings are available to the public over the Internet at the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

You may also access our SEC filings at our website [www.sab.bio](http://www.sab.bio). Our website and the information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in, and are not considered part of, this prospectus. You should not rely on our website or any such information in making your decision whether to purchase our securities.

## INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information contained in other documents we file with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. Any statement contained in any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded, for purposes of this prospectus, to the extent that a statement contained in or omitted from this prospectus, or in any other subsequently filed document that also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference herein, modifies or supersedes such statement. Any such statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below which have been filed by us:

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2024, filed with SEC on [March 31, 2025](#);
- Our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the fiscal periods ended March 31, 2025, June 30, 2025, and September 30, 2025, filed with the SEC on [May 9, 2025](#), [August 7, 2025](#), and [November 14, 2025](#), respectively;
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on [January 28, 2025](#), [February 5, 2025](#), [July 17, 2025](#), [July 21, 2025](#), [September 26, 2025](#), [September 30, 2025](#), and [December 29, 2025](#); and
- The description of our common stock and warrants in our registration statement on [Form 8-A filed with the SEC on January 8, 2021](#), including any amendments or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description.

In addition, all documents subsequently filed by us pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Exchange Act on or after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of the offering of the securities to which this prospectus relates, shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of such documents. However, any documents or portions thereof, whether specifically listed above or filed in the future, that are not deemed “filed” with the SEC, including without limitation any information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K or certain exhibits furnished pursuant to Item 9.01 of Form 8-K, shall not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

Any statement in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for the purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document which also is incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

You can request a copy of these filings, at no cost, by writing or telephoning us at the following address or telephone number:

SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.  
777 W 41st St., Suite 401  
Miami Beach, Florida 33140  
Attn: Corporate Secretary  
(305)-845-2813

\* \* \*

**The information in this prospectus supplement is not complete and may be changed. The Registrant may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus supplement is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where an offer or sale is not permitted.**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED DECEMBER 29, 2025**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**Up to \$75,000,000 of  
Common Stock**



We have entered into a sales agreement (the “Sales Agreement”) with UBS Securities LLC (the “agent” or the “sales agent”), relating to shares of our common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, offered by this prospectus supplement. In accordance with the terms of the Sales Agreement, we may offer and sell shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000 from time to time through the agent pursuant to this prospectus supplement

Our common stock is quoted on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the trading symbol “SABS.” On December 26, 2025, the last reported sale price of our common stock was \$3.78 per share.

Sales of our common stock, if any, under this prospectus supplement may be made in sales deemed to be “at the market offerings” as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”). The agent is not required to sell any specific number or dollar amount of securities, but will act as sales agent using commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices, on mutually agreed terms between the agent and us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in any escrow, trust or similar arrangement.

The compensation to the sales agent for sales of common stock sold pursuant to the Sales Agreement will be up to 3.0% of the gross proceeds of any shares of common stock sold under the Sales Agreement. In connection with the sale of the common stock on our behalf, the sales agent may be deemed to be “underwriters” within the meaning of the Securities Act and the compensation of the sales agent may be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have also agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to the sales agent with respect to certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). See “Plan of Distribution” beginning on page S-12 for additional information regarding compensation payable to the agent.

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”) and a “smaller reporting company” as defined under Rule 405 of the Securities Act, and as such, we have elected to comply with certain reduced public company reporting requirements. See “Prospectus Supplement Summary— Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Smaller Reporting Company” on page S-1 of this prospectus.

**Investing in our common stock involves significant risks. You should review carefully the “Risk Factors” on page S-7 of this prospectus supplement and page 7 of the accompanying base prospectus, and in the documents**

incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and accompanying base prospectus before investing in our common stock.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus supplement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

**UBS Investment Bank**

The date of this prospectus supplement is \_\_\_\_\_, 2025

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Prospectus Supplement

	<b>Page</b>
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT</a>	ii
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT SUMMARY</a>	1
<a href="#">THE OFFERING</a>	3
<a href="#">SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	5
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	7
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	9
<a href="#">DILUTION / CAPITALIZATION</a>	10
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	12
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	14
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	14
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	14
<a href="#">INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</a>	14

### Prospectus

	<b>Page</b>
<a href="#">ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS</a>	1
<a href="#">TRADEMARKS</a>	1
<a href="#">PROSPECTUS SUMMARY</a>	2
<a href="#">SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</a>	5
<a href="#">RISK FACTORS</a>	7
<a href="#">USE OF PROCEEDS</a>	8
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK WE MAY OFFER</a>	9
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER</a>	13
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS WE MAY OFFER</a>	20
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS WE MAY OFFER</a>	22
<a href="#">DESCRIPTION OF UNITS WE MAY OFFER</a>	23
<a href="#">PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</a>	25
<a href="#">EXPERTS</a>	26
<a href="#">LEGAL MATTERS</a>	26
<a href="#">WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION</a>	26
<a href="#">INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</a>	28

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT

This prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus are part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) utilizing a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration process, we may from time to time offer shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000 under this prospectus supplement at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of each such offering.

This prospectus supplement is not complete without, and may not be utilized except in connection with, the accompanying base prospectus and any amendments to such prospectus. This prospectus supplement provides you with specific information regarding the terms of this offering and our common stock, and also adds to and updates information contained in the accompanying base prospectus and the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus. The accompanying base prospectus provides more general information, some of which does not apply to this offering of our common stock.

Before buying any of the common stock that we are offering, we urge you to carefully read this prospectus supplement and all of the information incorporated by reference herein, as well as the additional information described under the headings “*Where You Can Find More Information*” and “*Information Incorporated by Reference.*” These documents contain important information that you should consider when making your investment decision.

To the extent there is a conflict between the information contained in this prospectus supplement, on the one hand, and the information contained in any document incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement that was filed with the SEC before the date of this prospectus supplement, on the other hand, you should rely on the information in this prospectus supplement. If any statement in one of these documents is inconsistent with a statement in another document having a later date—for example, a document incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement—the statement in the document having the later date modifies or supersedes the earlier statement.

We further note that the representations, warranties and covenants made by us in any agreement that is filed as an exhibit to any document that is incorporated by reference herein were made solely for the benefit of the parties to such agreement, including, in some cases, for the purpose of allocating risk among the parties to such agreement, and should not be deemed to be a representation, warranty or covenant to you. Moreover, such representations, warranties or covenants were accurate only as of the date when made. Accordingly, such representations, warranties and covenants should not be relied on as accurately representing the current state of our affairs.

We have not, and the sales agent has not, authorized anyone to provide you with any information other than that contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and in the accompanying base prospectus or in any related free writing prospectus that we authorize for use in connection with this offering and to which we have referred you. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. You should assume that the information appearing in this prospectus supplement, the documents incorporated by reference and the accompanying base prospectus or free writing prospectus is accurate only as of their respective dates. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed materially since those dates.

This prospectus supplement does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy any securities other than the securities described in this prospectus supplement or an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy such securities in any circumstances in which such offer or solicitation is unlawful.

In this prospectus supplement, unless the context suggests otherwise, references to “SAB Biotherapeutics,” “SAB,” the “Company,” “we,” “us” and “our” refer to SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.

## PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT SUMMARY

*This prospectus supplement summary highlights certain information about us and selected information contained elsewhere in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement. This prospectus supplement summary is not complete and does not contain all of the information that you should consider before making an investment decision. For a more complete understanding of the Company, you should read and consider carefully the more detailed information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and any applicable prospectus supplement or amendment, including the factors described under the heading “Risk Factors,” beginning on page S-7 of this prospectus supplement, as well as the information incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus, before making an investment decision.*

### **Business Overview**

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on developing multi-specific, high-potency, human immunoglobulin G (“hIgGs”), without the need for human donors or convalescent plasma, to treat and prevent autoimmune disorders. Our programs are based on mechanisms of action that have achieved proof-of-concept in clinical trials in indications with significant unmet medical needs. We are focused on developing product candidates for disease targets where a differentiated approach has the greatest potential to be either first-in-class against novel targets or best-in-class against complex targets to treat diseases, including type 1 diabetes (“T1D”) and other autoimmune disorders. Our internally discovered antibodies are multi-specific, meaning they are comprised of multiple hIgG and can bind to multiple sites on targeted immunogens, making them ideally suited to address the complexities associated with many immune-mediated disorders. Our proprietary platform holds the potential to generate additional novel therapeutic candidates to expand our pipeline, utilizing the human immune response to generate the optimal repertoire of hIgG for drug targets of interest. We believe it is the only technology capable of producing disease-targeted, hIgG in large quantities without the need for human plasma donors. We have optimized genetic engineering in the development of transchromosomal cattle, or Tc Bovine, which produce hIgG. Our engineering of our production platform drives IgG1 production across our pipeline. In addition, this differentiated approach using polyclonal antibodies has no biosimilar pathway, which provides a significant barrier to competitive polyclonal approaches.

### ***SAB-142: Our Lead Product Candidate***

Our wholly owned lead product candidate, SAB-142 is a human anti-thymocyte globulin (“hATG”) focused on preventing or delaying the progression of Stage 3 T1D. SAB-142 is a first-in-class, multi-target hATG treatment designed to provide superior efficacy and safety in delaying the onset or progression of T1D. SAB-142 is expected to reduce autoimmune  $\beta$ -cell destruction and delay progression or onset of T1D in patients with Stage 3 or Stage 2 T1D, respectively. The mechanism of action of SAB-142 has been clinically validated in numerous clinical trials with a rabbit anti-thymocyte globulin (“rATG”), and rATG has demonstrated in multiple clinical trials the ability to slow disease progression in patients with new or recent onset of Stage 3 T1D. In addition, data from more than 700 human subjects treated with antibodies produced by our platform support the expectation of a zero-serum sickness rate and a zero incidence of neutralizing anti-drug antibodies (“ADA”) within the upcoming SAB-142 clinical trials.

We received an Investigational New Drug (“IND”) clearance from the FDA in May 2024 and announced positive topline data from our Phase 1 clinical trial of SAB-142 in January 2025. We are advancing SAB-142 into a Phase 2b clinical trial called the SAFEGUARD study. On May 29, 2025, the Company held a constructive Type B meeting with the FDA. The meeting followed positive topline data from a Phase 1 single-ascending dose trial in healthy volunteers for SAB-142. The primary discussion centered on questions related to all aspects of SAB-142’s Phase 2b SAFEGUARD clinical trial design and chemistry, manufacturing, and controls processes. The FDA provided clear, constructive, and actionable guidance during the discussion leading to alignment on the design and advancement of our Phase 2b SAFEGUARD study. SAB confirmed its intent with the FDA to utilize the data from this study as supportive evidence for future regulatory approval.

### ***Other Immunology Indications***

T- and B-cells are multifunctional lymphocytes whose dysregulation was shown to have a central role in the pathogenesis of more than 80 autoimmune diseases, including T1D, systemic lupus erythematosus (“SLE”), rheumatoid arthritis (“RA”), multiple sclerosis (“MS”) and celiac disease. The therapeutic success to date of lymphocyte-mediating therapies in variety of autoimmune diseases and our *in vivo* and *in vitro* pre-clinical and Phase 1 work from SAB-142 in T1D will support direct progression into Phase 2 clinical trials in other autoimmune indications.

Since the commencement of our operations, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to research and development activities, organizing and staffing our company, business planning, raising capital, establishing and maintaining our intellectual property portfolio, conducting preclinical studies and clinical trials and providing general and administrative support for these operations.

### **Corporate Information**

We were incorporated in the State of Delaware on November 12, 2020, as a special purpose acquisition company under the name Big Cypress Acquisition Corp. (“BCYP”). On January 14, 2021, BCYP completed its initial public offering. On October 22, 2021, BCYP consummated a business combination with SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. (the “Business Combination”), which changed its name to SAB Sciences, Inc. In connection with the closing of the business combination, BCYP changed its name to SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. and SAB Sciences, Inc. became a subsidiary of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.

Our principal executive offices are located at 777 W 41st St., Suite 401 Miami Beach, Florida 33140, and our telephone number is (305)-845-2813. Our website is located at <https://www.sab.bio>. We do not incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information on, or accessible through, our website. Our common stock trades on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SABS”.

### **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Smaller Reporting Company**

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act, and therefore we intend to take advantage of certain exemptions from various public company reporting requirements, including not being required to have our internal control over financial reporting audited by our independent registered public accounting firm pursuant to Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this prospectus, our periodic reports and our proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest of (i) the last day of the fiscal year in which the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates equals or exceeds \$700 million as of the end of that year’s second fiscal quarter, (ii) the last day of the fiscal year in which we have total annual gross revenue of \$1.235 billion or more during such fiscal year (as indexed for inflation), (iii) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt in the prior three-year period or (iv) December 31, 2026.

We are also a “smaller reporting company” as defined under the Securities Act and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). We may continue to be a smaller reporting company so long as either (i) the market value of shares of our common stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$250 million or (ii) our annual revenue was less than \$100 million during the most recently completed fiscal year and the market value of shares of our common stock held by non-affiliates is less than \$700 million. If we are a smaller reporting company at the time we cease to be an emerging growth company, we may continue to rely on exemptions from certain disclosure requirements that are available to smaller reporting companies. Specifically, as a smaller reporting company, we may choose to present only the two most recent fiscal years of audited financial statements in our Annual Report on Form 10-K and have reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation, and, similar to emerging growth companies, if we are a smaller reporting company under the requirements of (ii) above, we would not be required to obtain an attestation report on internal control over financial reporting issued by our independent registered public accounting firm.

## THE OFFERING

<b>Common stock offered by us pursuant to this prospectus supplement</b>	Shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000.
<b>Common stock to be outstanding after this offering</b>	Up to 67,389,928 shares, assuming sales of 19,841,269 shares of our common stock in this offering at an offering price of \$3.78 per share, which was the last reported sale price of our common stock on The Nasdaq Capital Market on December 26, 2025. The actual number of shares issued will vary depending on the sales price under this offering.
<b>Manner of Offering</b>	This is an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) under the Securities Act, that may be made from time to time on The Nasdaq Capital Market, the existing trading market for our common stock, through the sales agent. See “Plan of Distribution” on page S-12 of this prospectus supplement.
<b>Use of Proceeds</b>	We currently intend to use the net proceeds, if any, from the sale of shares of our common stock to support pipeline development and for working capital and other general corporate purposes. See “Use of Proceeds” on page S-9 of this prospectus supplement.
<b>Risk Factors</b>	Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. See the information contained in or incorporated by reference under the heading “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-7 of this prospectus supplement and page 7 of the accompanying base prospectus, and under similar headings in the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus.
<b>Common Stock Nasdaq Capital Market Symbol</b>	“SABS”.

The number of shares of our common stock outstanding after this offering is based on 47,548,659 shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 30, 2025 and excludes:

- 2,233,407 shares issuable upon exercise of exercise of outstanding common stock purchase warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$36.84;
- 6,749,170 shares issuable upon exercise of our issued and outstanding stock options with a weighted-average exercise price of \$4.06 per share;
- 18,818 shares issuable for restricted stock grants outstanding;
- 25,845,059 shares reserved for issuance, but not subject to outstanding options or restricted stock awards, under our incentive equity plans;
- 32,613,047 shares reserved for issuance under our employee stock purchase plan;

- 4,617,681 shares issuable upon conversion of our Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Series A Preferred Stock”), including shares of Series A Preferred Stock issuable upon exercise of Series A Preferred Stock purchase warrants; and
- 213,855,800 shares issuable upon conversion of our Series B Convertible Preferred Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (“Series B Preferred Stock”), including shares of Series B Preferred Stock issuable upon exercise of Series B Preferred Stock purchase warrants.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and certain information incorporated herein by reference contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward-looking statements. The statements contained in this prospectus that are not purely historical are forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Forward-looking statements are often identified by the use of words such as, but not limited to, “anticipate,” “believe,” “can,” “continue,” “could,” “estimate,” “expect,” “intend,” “may,” “plan,” “project,” “seek,” “should,” “strategy,” “target,” “will,” “would” and similar expressions or variations intended to identify forward-looking statements. These statements are based on the beliefs and assumptions of our management based on information currently available to management. Such forward-looking statements are subject to risks, uncertainties and other important factors that could cause actual results and the timing of certain events to differ materially from future results expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements.

Factors that might cause these differences include the following:

- the success, cost and timing of our product development activities and clinical trials, including statements regarding our plans for clinical development of our product candidates, the initiation and completion of clinical trials and related preparatory work and the expected timing of the availability of results of clinical trials;
- our ability to recruit and enroll suitable patients in our clinical trials;
- the potential indications, attributes and benefits of our product candidates;
- our ability to obtain and maintain regulatory approval for our product candidates, and any related restrictions, limitations or warnings in the label of an approved product candidate;
- our ability to obtain funding for our operations, including funding necessary to complete further development, approval and, if approved, commercialization of our product candidates;
- the period over which we anticipate our existing cash and cash equivalents will be sufficient to fund our operating expense and capital expenditure requirements;
- the potential for our business development efforts to maximize the potential value of our portfolio;
- our ability to identify, in-license or acquire additional product candidates;
- our ability to compete with other companies currently marketing or engaged in the development of treatments for the indications that we are pursuing for our product candidates;
- our expectations regarding our ability to obtain and maintain intellectual property protection for our product candidates and the duration of such protection;
- our ability to contract with and rely on third parties to assist in conducting our clinical trials and manufacturing our product candidates;
- our manufacturing capabilities, third-party contractor capabilities and strategy;
- our plans related to manufacturing, supply and other collaborative agreements;
- the size and growth potential of the markets for our product candidates, and our ability to serve those markets, either alone or in partnership with others;
- the rate and degree of market acceptance of our product candidates, if approved;
- the pricing and reimbursement of our product candidates, if approved;
- regulatory developments in the United States and foreign countries;
- the impact of laws, regulations, accounting standards, regulatory requirements, judicial decisions and guidance issued by authoritative bodies;
- our ability to attract and retain key scientific, medical, commercial or management personnel;

- our estimates regarding expenses, future revenue, capital requirements and needs for additional financing;
- our financial performance;
- our ability to maintain our listing on The Nasdaq Capital Market; and
- our ability to continue as a going concern.

## RISK FACTORS

*Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Before making a decision to invest in our securities, in addition to carefully considering the other information contained in this prospectus supplement, in the accompanying base prospectus and incorporated by reference herein or therein, you should carefully consider the risks described under the caption "Risk Factors" contained in the accompanying base prospectus, and any related free writing prospectus, and the risks discussed under the caption "Risk Factors" contained in our most recent annual report on Form 10-K and in our most recent quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, as well as any amendments thereto, which are incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement in their entirety, together with other information in this prospectus supplement, the documents incorporated by reference, and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with a specific offering. See "Where You Can Find More Information" and "Incorporation by Reference."*

### **Risks Related to this Offering**

***You may experience immediate and substantial dilution in the net tangible book value per share of the common stock you purchase.***

The offering price per share in this offering may exceed the net tangible book value per share of our common stock outstanding prior to this offering. Assuming that an aggregate 19,841,269 shares of our common stock are sold in this offering at an assumed offering price of \$3.78 per share, which was the last reported sale price of our common stock on The Nasdaq Capital Market on December 26, 2025, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$75,000,000, and after deducting commissions, you would experience immediate dilution of \$0.25 per share, representing the difference between our net tangible book value per share as of September 30, 2025, on an unaudited as adjusted basis after giving effect to this offering. Because the offering price per share will vary based on the market for our common stock and our net tangible book value per share will change over the course of the offering, the actual dilution experienced by you may be more or less than this amount. See "Dilution."

***Issuances by the Company or sales by stockholders of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market could cause our stock price to fall.***

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public markets, or the perception that such sales could occur, could depress the market price of our common stock and impair our ability to raise capital through the sale of additional equity securities. If our stockholders sell, or the market perceives that our stockholders intend to sell, substantial amount of our common stock in the public market, the market price of our common stock could decline significantly.

Shares issued upon the exercise of stock options outstanding under our equity incentive plans or pursuant to future awards granted under those plans will become available for sale in the public market to the extent permitted by the provisions of applicable vesting schedules and Rule 144 and Rule 701 under the Securities Act.

***Our management team will have broad discretion to use the net proceeds from this offering and its investment of these proceeds may not yield a favorable return.***

Our management team will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds from this offering and could spend or invest the proceeds in ways that may not yield a favorable return or enhance the value of our common stock. Accordingly, investors will need to rely on our management team's judgment with respect to the use of these proceeds. We intend to use the proceeds, if any, from this offering in the manner described in the section titled "Use of Proceeds." The failure by management to apply these funds effectively could negatively affect our ability to operate and grow our business. We cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the completion of this offering, and the uses will depend on how much of the maximum \$75,000,000 of shares are actually sold in this offering. In addition, the amount, allocation and timing of our actual expenditures will depend upon numerous factors. Accordingly, we will have broad discretion in using these proceeds. Until the net proceeds are used, they may be placed in investments that do not produce significant income or that may lose value.

***We do not anticipate paying cash dividends and, accordingly, stockholders must rely on share appreciation for any return on their investment.***

We have never paid any dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain our future earnings, if any, to fund the development and growth of our businesses and do not anticipate that we will declare or pay any cash dividends on our capital stock in the foreseeable future. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common stock will be your sole source of gain on your investment for the foreseeable future. Investors seeking cash dividends should not invest in our common stock.

***Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our stockholders, including purchasers of our common stock in this offering, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish substantial rights.***

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these new securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a common stockholder. Debt financing, if available, may involve fixed payment obligations or agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through partnerships, collaborations, strategic alliances or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, product candidates or future revenue streams, or grant licenses on terms that are not favorable to us. We cannot assure you that we will be able to obtain additional funding if and when necessary. If we are unable to obtain adequate financing on a timely basis, we could be required to delay, scale back or eliminate one or more of our clinical or discovery programs or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves. In addition, we may seek additional capital due to favorable market conditions or strategic considerations even if we believe we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans.

***The common stock offered hereby will be sold in “at the market offerings,” and investors who buy shares at different times will likely pay different prices.***

Investors who purchase shares in this offering at different times will likely pay different prices, and accordingly may experience different levels of dilution and different outcomes in their investment results. We will have discretion, subject to market demand and the terms of the Sales Agreement, to vary the timing, prices and number of shares sold in this offering. In addition, subject to the final determination by our board of directors or any restrictions we may place in any applicable placement notice, there is no minimum or maximum sales price for shares to be sold in this offering. Investors may experience a decline in the value of the shares they purchase in this offering as a result of sales made at prices lower than the prices they paid.

***The actual number of shares we will issue under the Sales Agreement, at any one time or in total, is uncertain.***

Subject to certain limitations in the Sales Agreement and compliance with applicable law, we have the discretion to deliver a placement notice to a sales agent at any time throughout the term of the Sales Agreement. The number of shares that are sold by such sales agent after delivering a placement notice will fluctuate based on the market price of the shares of common stock during the sales period and limits we set with such sales agent. Because the price per share of each share sold will fluctuate based on the market price of our common stock during the sales period, it is not possible at this stage to predict the number of shares of common stock that will be ultimately issued.

## **USE OF PROCEEDS**

We may issue and sell shares of our common stock having aggregate sales proceeds of up to \$75,000,000 from time to time. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to any sales in this offering, the actual total public offering amount, commissions and proceeds to us, if any, are not determinable at this time. There can be no assurance that we will sell any shares under or fully utilize the Sales Agreement with the sales agent as a source of financing.

We intend to use the net proceeds, if any, from the sale of our common stock in this offering to support pipeline development and for working capital and general corporate purposes. We have not identified the amounts we will spend on any specific purpose. The amounts actually expended for any purpose may vary significantly depending upon numerous factors, including assessments of potential market opportunities, the results of clinical trials and regulatory developments. In the event any net proceeds are not immediately applied, we may temporarily deposit them in our bank accounts as cash and cash equivalents or purchase short-term investments.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our shares, your ownership interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the price you paid per share of common stock in this offering and the net tangible book value per share of our common stock after this offering.

Our net tangible book value as of September 30, 2025 was approximately \$165.1 million, or approximately \$3.47 per share of our common stock issued and outstanding. Net tangible book value per share represents total tangible assets less total liabilities, divided by the number of shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 30, 2025.

Our net tangible book value as of September 30, 2025 would have been approximately \$237.6 million, or approximately \$3.53 per share of our common stock issued and outstanding, after giving effect to the sale by us of 19,841,269 shares of our common stock in this offering at an assumed offering price of \$3.78 per share, which was the last reported sale price of our common stock on The Nasdaq Capital Market on December 26, 2025, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$75,000,000, and after deducting commissions payable by us. This represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value of \$0.06 per share of our common stock to existing stockholders and an immediate dilution of \$0.25 per share of our common stock to new investors purchasing shares of our common stock in this offering at the assumed offering price.

The following table illustrates the dilution on a per share of common stock basis for investors purchasing shares of our common stock in this offering:

Assumed public offering price per share		\$	3.78
Net tangible book value per share as of September 30, 2025	\$	3.47	
Increase in net tangible book value attributable to this offering	\$	0.06	
As adjusted net tangible book value per share as of September 30, 2025		\$	3.53
Dilution in net tangible book value per share to new investors		\$	0.25

These calculations are based on 47,548,659 shares outstanding as of September 30, 2025 and excluding, as of that date, the following:

- 2,233,407 shares issuable upon exercise of exercise of outstanding common stock purchase warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$36.84;
- 6,749,170 shares issuable upon exercise of our issued and outstanding stock options with a weighted-average exercise price of \$4.06 per share;
- 18,818 shares issuable for restricted stock grants outstanding;
- 25,845,059 shares reserved for issuance, but not subject to outstanding options or restricted stock awards, under our incentive equity plans;
- 32,613,047 shares reserved for issuance under our employee stock purchase plan;
- 4,617,681 shares issuable upon conversion of our Series A Preferred Stock, including shares of Series A Preferred Stock issuable upon exercise of Series A Preferred Stock purchase warrants; and
- 213,855,800 shares issuable upon conversion of our Series B Preferred Stock, including shares of Series B Preferred Stock issuable upon exercise of Series B Preferred Stock purchase warrants.

The table above assumes, for illustrative purposes, that an aggregate of 19,841,269 shares of our common stock are sold at an offering price of \$3.78 per share, the last reported sale price of our common stock on The Nasdaq Capital Market on December 26, 2025, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$75,000,000. However, the shares sold in this offering, if any, will be sold from time to time at various prices. Presented below, solely for illustrative purposes only, is the effect of each of an increase and a decrease of the assumed offering price by \$1.00 per share.

Assuming that an aggregate of 15,690,376 shares of our common stock are sold at an offering price of \$4.78 per share, representing an increase of \$1.00 per share from the assumed offering price above, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$75 million, after deducting commissions payable by us, our net tangible book value per share on an as adjusted basis would be \$3.76 per share and the dilution in net tangible book value per share to new investors would be \$1.02 per share.

Assuming that an aggregate of 26,978,417 shares of our common stock are sold at an offering price of \$2.78 per share, representing a decrease of \$1.00 per share from the assumed offering price above, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$75 million, after deducting commissions payable by us, our net tangible book value per share on an unaudited as adjusted basis would be \$3.19 per share and the accretion in net tangible book value per share to new investors would be \$0.41 per share.

To the extent that other shares are issued, investors purchasing shares in this offering could experience further dilution. In addition, we may choose to raise additional capital due to market conditions or strategic considerations, even if we believe we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans. To the extent that additional capital is raised through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the issuance of those securities could result in further dilution to investors in this offering.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We have entered into the Sales Agreement with the sales agent relating to the sale of shares of our common stock offered by this prospectus supplement. Under this prospectus supplement, in accordance with the terms of the Sales Agreement, we may sell shares of our common stock for an aggregate offering price of up to \$75,000,000 from time to time through or to the sales agent, acting as sales agent, subject to certain limitations, including the number or dollar amount of shares registered under the registration statement to which the offering relates. The sales, if any, of shares made under the Sales Agreement may be made in negotiated transactions, including block trades or block sales, or by any method permitted by law that is deemed to be an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act, including without limitation sales made through The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC or an any other existing trading market for our common stock, or by any other method permitted by law. Sales pursuant to the Sales Agreement may be made through an affiliate of the sales agent. We may instruct the sales agent not to sell common stock if the sales cannot be effected at or above the price designated by us from time to time. We or the sales agent may suspend the offering of common stock upon notice and subject to other conditions.

Each time we wish to issue and sell common stock under the Sales Agreement, we will notify the sales agent of the number or dollar value of shares to be issued, the dates on which such sales are anticipated to be made, any minimum price below which sales may not be made and other sales parameters as we deem appropriate. Once we have so instructed the sales agent, unless it declines to accept the terms of the notice, the sales agent has agreed to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell such shares up to the amount specified on such terms. The obligations of the sales agent under the Sales Agreement to sell our common stock is subject to a number of conditions that we must meet.

We will pay the sales agent an aggregate commission of up to 3.0% of the gross proceeds from the sale of common stock offered hereby. Under the Sales Agreement, we also agreed to reimburse the sales agent up to \$75,000 of the sales agent’s actual outside legal expenses incurred in connection with executing the Sales Agreement and certain ongoing expenses incurred in connection with the sales agent’s ongoing diligence arising from the transactions contemplated by the Sales Agreement. In accordance with Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. Rule 5110, these fees and reimbursed expenses are deemed sales compensation in connection with this offering. We estimate that the total expenses for the offering, excluding compensation payable to the sales agent under the terms of the Sales Agreement, will be approximately \$261,000.

Settlement for sales of common stock will generally occur on the first trading day following the date on which any sales are made, or on some other date that is agreed upon by us and the sales agent in connection with a particular transaction, in return for payment of the net proceeds to us. There is no arrangement for funds to be received in an escrow, trust or similar arrangement. We will report at least quarterly the number of shares of common stock sold through the sales agent under the Sales Agreement and the net proceeds to us in connection with the sales of common stock.

In connection with the sale of shares of our common stock on our behalf, each sales agent may be deemed to be an “underwriter” within the meaning of the Securities Act, and the compensation of such sales agent may be deemed to be underwriting commissions or discounts. We have agreed to provide indemnification and contribution to the sales agent against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

The sales agent or we may suspend the offering of our common stock being made through the sales agent under the Sales Agreement upon proper notice to the other party. The sales agent and we each have the right, by giving written notice as specified in the Sales Agreement, to terminate the Sales Agreement in each party’s sole discretion at any time. The offering of shares of our common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement will otherwise terminate upon the termination of the Sales Agreement as provided therein. The offering of our common stock pursuant to this prospectus supplement will otherwise terminate upon the earlier of (i) the sale of all of our common stock provided for in this prospectus supplement or (ii) termination of the Sales Agreement as provided therein.

Our common stock is listed on The Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SABS”. The transfer agent for our common stock is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company.

Each sales agent and its respective affiliates may in the future provide various investment banking and other financial services for us and our affiliates, for which services they may in the future receive customary fees. In the course of their business, the sales agent may actively trade our securities for their own account or for the accounts of customers, and, accordingly, the sales agent may at any time hold long or short positions in such securities.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. as of and for the years ended December 31, 2024 and 2023, included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2024, have been audited by EisnerAmper LLP, independent registered public accounting firm, as set forth in their report (which report includes an explanatory paragraph regarding the existence of substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern), and have been incorporated herein by reference in reliance upon such report given on the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

## LEGAL MATTERS

If and when the securities being registered hereunder are issued, the validity of such issuance will be passed upon for the Company by Dentons US LLP, New York, New York. The sales agent is being represented in connection with this offering by Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., Boston, Massachusetts.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

This prospectus is part of the registration statement on Form S-3 we filed with the SEC under the Securities Act and does not contain all the information set forth in the registration statement. Whenever a reference is made in this prospectus to any of our contracts, agreements or other documents, the reference may not be complete and you should refer to the exhibits that are a part of the registration statement or the exhibits to the reports or other documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus for a copy of such contract, agreement or other document. Because we are subject to the information and reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, we file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. Our SEC filings are available to the public over the Internet at the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

You may also access our SEC filings at our website [www.sab.bio](http://www.sab.bio). Our website and the information contained on, or that can be accessed through, our website will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in, and are not considered part of, this prospectus. You should not rely on our website or any such information in making your decision whether to purchase our securities.

## INFORMATION INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference into this prospectus the information contained in other documents we file with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. Any statement contained in any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded, for purposes of this prospectus, to the extent that a statement contained in or omitted from this prospectus, or in any other subsequently filed document that also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference herein, modifies or supersedes such statement. Any such statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below which have been filed by us:

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2024, filed with SEC on [March 31, 2025](#);
- Our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the fiscal periods ended March 31, 2025, June 30, 2025, and September 30, 2025, filed with the SEC on [May 9, 2025](#), [August 7, 2025](#), and [November 14, 2025](#), respectively;
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on [January 28, 2025](#), [February 5, 2025](#), [July 17, 2025](#), [July 21, 2025](#), [September 26, 2025](#), [September 30, 2025](#), and [December 29, 2025](#); and

- The description of our common stock and warrants in our registration statement on [Form 8-A filed with the SEC on January 8, 2021](#), including any amendments or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description.

In addition, all documents subsequently filed by us pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 and 15(d) of the Exchange Act on or after the date of this prospectus and prior to the termination of the offering of the securities to which this prospectus relates, shall be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus and to be a part hereof from the date of filing of such documents. However, any documents or portions thereof, whether specifically listed above or filed in the future, that are not deemed “filed” with the SEC, including without limitation any information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K or certain exhibits furnished pursuant to Item 9.01 of Form 8-K, shall not be deemed to be incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

Any statement in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for the purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document which also is incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference herein modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus.

You can request a copy of these filings, at no cost, by writing or telephoning us at the following address or telephone number:

SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.  
777 W 41st St., Suite 401  
Miami Beach, Florida 33140  
Attn: Corporate Secretary  
(305)-845-2813

**Up to \$75,000,000 of  
Common Stock**



**SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.**

**PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT**

**UBS Investment Bank**

**, 2025**

---

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table sets forth all expenses, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions, payable by the registrant in connection with the sale of the securities being registered. All of such fees and expenses, except for the registration fee, are estimates.

SEC Registration fee	\$	34,525
Accounting fees and expenses	\$	*
Legal fees and expenses	\$	*
Miscellaneous fees and expenses	\$	*
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>34,525</b>

\*The calculation of these fees and expenses is dependent on the number of issuances and amount of securities offered and, accordingly, cannot be estimated at this time.

The Company shall bear all expenses in connection with the issuance and distribution of the securities being offered hereby.

**Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

Section 145 of the DGCL provides that a corporation may indemnify directors and officers as well as other employees and individuals against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by such person in connection with any threatened, pending or completed actions, suits or proceedings in which such person is made a party by reason of such person being or having been a director, officer, employee or agent of the registrant. The DGCL provides that Section 145 is not exclusive of other rights to which those seeking indemnification may be entitled under any bylaws, agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise. The Registrant's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws provide for indemnification by the Registrant of its directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL.

Section 102(b)(7) of the DGCL permits a corporation to provide in its Certificate of Incorporation that a director of the corporation shall not be personally liable to the corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liability (1) for any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders, (2) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (3) for unlawful payments of dividends or unlawful stock repurchases redemptions or other distributions or (4) for any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit. The registrant's Certificate of Incorporation provides for such limitation of liability to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL.

The registrant has entered into indemnification agreements with each of its directors and executive officers to provide contractual indemnification in addition to the indemnification provided in our Certificate of Incorporation. Each indemnification agreement provides for indemnification and advancements by the registrant of certain expenses and costs relating to claims, suits or proceedings arising from his or her service to the registrant or, at our request, service to other entities, as officers or directors to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law. We believe that these provisions and agreements are necessary to attract qualified directors.

The registrant also maintains standard policies of insurance under which coverage is provided (1) to its directors and officers against loss arising from claims made by reason of breach of duty or other wrongful act, while acting directors and officers of the registrant, and (2) to the registrant with respect to payments which may be made by the Registrant to such officers and directors pursuant to any indemnification provision contained in the Registrant's Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws or otherwise as a matter of law.

**Item 16. Exhibits.**

See the Exhibit Index attached to this registration statement and incorporated herein by this reference.

**Item 17. Undertakings.**

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement;

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

*provided, however*, that paragraphs (1)(i), (1)(ii) and (1)(iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the registrant pursuant to section 13 or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act") that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(i) Each prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities:

The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
- (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
- (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
- (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.

(b) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Exchange Act (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Exchange Act) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(h) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

(j) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under section 305(b)(2) of the Act.

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

Exhibit Number	Description	Incorporated by Reference			
		Schedule/ Form	File No.	Exhibit	Filing Date
1.1*^	Sales Agreement, dated December 29, 2025, by and between SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. and UBS Securities LLC				
3.1	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.</a>	8-K	001-39871	3.1	October 28, 2021
3.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws.</a>	8-K	001-39871	3.2	October 28, 2021
4.1	<a href="#">Specimen common stock Certificate of Registrant.</a>	S-1/A	333-258869	4.2	January 4, 2021
4.2**	Form of Specimen Certificate Representing Preferred Stock				
4.3*	<a href="#">Form of Indenture</a>				
4.4**	Form of Subordinated Debt Securities Indenture.				
4.5**	Form of Senior Debt Securities Indenture.				
4.6**	Form of Warrant.				
4.7**	Form of Warrant Agreement.				
4.8**	Form of Unit Agreement				
5.1*	<a href="#">Opinion of Dentons US LLP</a>				
23.1*	<a href="#">Consent of Dentons US LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1)</a>				
23.2*	<a href="#">Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>				
24.1*	<a href="#">Power of Attorney (included on a signature page of the initial filing of this Registration Statement)</a>				
25.1***	Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, of Debt Trustee (to be filed prior to any issuance of Debt Securities).				
107*	<a href="#">Filing Fee Table</a>				

\* Filed herewith

\*\* To be filed by amendment

\*\*\* To be filed in accordance with the requirements of Section 305(b)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939.

^ Certain portions of the exhibit have been omitted pursuant to Item 601(a)(6) of Regulation S-K. The Company hereby agrees to furnish a copy of any omitted portion to the SEC upon request.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Company has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized in City of Miami Beach, Florida, on this December 29, 2025.

SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.

Date: December 29, 2025

By:

/s/ Samuel J. Reich

**Samuel J. Reich**  
**Chief Executive Officer**

## POWER OF ATTORNEY

**KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS**, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Samuel J. Reich and Lucy To., and each of them acting individually, as his or her true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent, with full power of each to act alone, with full powers of substitution and resubstitution, for him or her and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any and all amendments to this registration statement (including post-effective amendments and any registration statement for the same offering that is to be effective under Rule 462(b) of the Securities Act), and to file the same with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorney-in-fact and agent, and full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in connection therewith, as fully for all intents and purposes as he or she might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming that all said attorneys-in-fact and agents, or any of them or their substitute or resubstitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<b>Signature</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Date</b>
<u>/s/ Samuel J. Reich</u> Samuel J. Reich	Chair and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ Lucy To</u> Lucy To	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ Eddie J. Sullivan, PhD</u> Eddie J. Sullivan, PhD	President and Director	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ Katie Ellias</u> Katie Ellias	Director	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ Scott Giberson, RPh, MPH, D.Sc.</u> Scott Giberson, RPh, MPH, D.Sc.	Director	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ David Charles Link</u> David Charles Link	Director	December 29, 2025
<u>/s/ Erick Lucera</u> Erick Lucera	Director	December 29, 2025

*/s/ Andrew Moin*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Andrew Moin

Director

December 29, 2025

*/s/ William Polvino, MD, PhD*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
William Polvino, MD, PhD

Director

December 29, 2025

*/s/ Jay Skyler, MD*  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Jay Skyler, MD

Director

December 29, 2025

CERTAIN IDENTIFIED INFORMATION HAS BEEN EXCLUDED FROM THE EXHIBIT BECAUSE DISCLOSURE OF SUCH INFORMATION WOULD CONSTITUTE A CLEARLY UNWARRANTED INVASION OF PERSONAL PRIVACY. REDACTED INFORMATION IS MARKED WITH

A [\*\*\*\*\*].

**SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.**  
Shares of Common Stock  
(par value \$0.0001 per share)

**Sales Agreement**

December 29, 2025

UBS Securities LLC

c/o UBS Securities LLC  
11 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10010

Ladies and Gentlemen:

SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), confirms its agreement (this “**Agreement**”) with UBS Securities LLC (the “**Agent**”), as follows:

1. **Issuance and Sale of Shares.** The Company agrees that, from time to time during the term of this Agreement, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, it may issue and sell to or through the Agent, as sales agent or principal, shares of common stock (the “**Placement Shares**”) of the Company, par value \$0.0001 per share (the “**Common Stock**”); *provided, however,* that in no event shall the Company issue or sell through the Agent such number or dollar amount of Placement Shares that would (a) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock registered on the effective Registration Statement (defined below) pursuant to which the offering is being made, (b) exceed the number of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock (less shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise, conversion or exchange of any outstanding securities of the Company or otherwise reserved from the Company’s authorized capital stock), (c) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock permitted to be sold under Form S-3 (including General Instruction I.B.6 thereof, if applicable) or (d) exceed the number or dollar amount of shares of Common Stock for which the Company has filed a Prospectus Supplement (defined below) (the least of (a), (b), (c) and (d), the “**Maximum Amount**”). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the parties hereto agree that compliance with the limitations set forth in this **Section 1** on the amount of Placement Shares issued and sold under this Agreement shall be the sole responsibility of the Company and that the Agent shall have no obligation in connection with such compliance. The offer and sale of Placement Shares through the Agent will be effected pursuant to the Registration Statement (as defined below) that will be or has been filed by the Company and which will be declared or deemed effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**Commission**”), although nothing in this Agreement shall be construed as requiring the Company to use the Registration Statement to issue Common Stock.
-

The Company will file, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), and the rules and regulations thereunder (the “**Securities Act Regulations**”), with the Commission a registration statement on Form S-3, including a base prospectus, relating to certain securities, including the Placement Shares to be issued from time to time by the Company, and which incorporates by reference documents that the Company has filed or will file in accordance with the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”), and the rules and regulations thereunder. The Company has prepared a prospectus included as part of the registration statement, which prospectus relates to the Placement Shares to be issued from time to time by the Company (the “**Sales Prospectus**”). Except where the context otherwise requires, such registration statement, as amended by any post-effective amendment thereto, including all documents filed as part thereof or incorporated by reference therein, and including any information contained in a Prospectus (as defined below) subsequently filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act Regulations or deemed to be a part of such registration statement pursuant to Rule 430B of the Securities Act Regulations, and any one or more additional effective registration statements on Form S-3 from time to time that will contain a base prospectus and related prospectus or prospectus supplement, if applicable (which shall be a “**Prospectus Supplement**”), with respect to the Placement Shares, is herein called the “**Registration Statement**.” The base prospectus or base prospectuses (including the Sales Prospectus), including all documents incorporated therein by reference, included in the Registration Statement, as they may be supplemented, if necessary, by a Prospectus Supplement, in the form in which such prospectus or prospectuses and/or Prospectus Supplement have most recently been filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act Regulations, together with the then issued Issuer Free Writing Prospectus(es) (as defined below), is herein called the “**Prospectus**.”

Any reference herein to the Registration Statement, any Prospectus Supplement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, and, in each case, any amendments and supplements thereto, shall be deemed to refer to and include the documents, if any, incorporated by reference therein (the “**Incorporated Documents**”), including, unless the context otherwise requires, the documents, if any, filed as exhibits to such Incorporated Documents. Any reference herein to the terms “amend,” “amendment” or “supplement” with respect to the Registration Statement, any Prospectus Supplement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus shall be deemed to refer to and include the filing of any document under the Exchange Act on or after the most-recent effective date of the Registration Statement, or the date of the Prospectus Supplement, Prospectus or such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, as the case may be, and incorporated therein by reference. For purposes of this Agreement, all references to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or to any amendment or supplement thereto shall be deemed to include the most recent copy filed with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering Analysis and Retrieval system, or if applicable, the Interactive Data Electronic Application system when used by the Commission (collectively, “**EDGAR**”).

2. **Placements.** Each time that the Company wishes to issue and sell Placement Shares hereunder (each, a “**Placement**”), it will notify the **Agent** by email notice (or other method mutually agreed to by the parties) of the number of Placement Shares to be issued, the time period during which sales are requested to be made, any limitation on the number of Placement Shares that may be sold in any one day and any minimum price below which sales may not be made (a

“**Placement Notice**”), the form of which is attached hereto as Schedule 1. The Placement Notice shall originate from any of the individuals from the Company set forth on Schedule 3 (with a copy to each of the other individuals from the Company listed on such schedule), and shall be addressed to each of the individuals from the Agent set forth on Schedule 3, as such Schedule 3 may be amended from time to time. The Placement Notice shall be effective unless and until (i) the Agent declines to accept the terms contained therein for any reason, in its sole discretion, (ii) the entire amount of the Placement Shares thereunder have been sold, (iii) the Company suspends or terminates the Placement Notice or (iv) this Agreement has been terminated under the provisions of Section 12. The amount of any discount, commission or other compensation to be paid by the Company to the Agent in connection with the sale of the Placement Shares shall be calculated in accordance with the terms set forth in Schedule 2. It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that neither the Company nor the Agent will have any obligation whatsoever with respect to a Placement or any Placement Shares unless and until the Company delivers a Placement Notice to the Agent and the Agent does not decline such Placement Notice pursuant to the terms set forth above, and then only upon the terms specified therein and herein. In the event of a conflict between the terms of this Agreement and the terms of a Placement Notice, the terms of the Placement Notice will control.

3. Sale of Placement Shares by the Agent. On the basis of the representations and warranties herein contained and subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth, upon the Agent’s acceptance of the terms of a Placement Notice, and unless the sale of the Placement Shares described therein has been declined, suspended, or otherwise terminated in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, the Agent, for the period specified in the Placement Notice, will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable state and federal laws, rules and regulations and the rules of The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC (the “**Exchange**”), to sell such Placement Shares up to the amount specified, and otherwise in accordance with the terms of such Placement Notice, subject to the provisions of Section 5(a). The Agent will provide written confirmation to the Company no later than the opening of the Trading Day (as defined below) immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Placement Shares hereunder setting forth the number of Placement Shares sold on such day, the compensation payable by the Company to the Agent pursuant to Section 2 with respect to such sales, and the Net Proceeds (as defined below) payable to the Company, with an itemization of the deductions made by the Agent (as set forth in Section 5(b)) from the gross proceeds that it receives from such sales. Subject to the terms of the Placement Notice, the Agent may sell Placement Shares by any method permitted by law deemed to be an “at the market offering” as defined in Rule 415(a)(4) of the Securities Act Regulations. “**Trading Day**” means any day on which Common Stock is traded on the Exchange.
4. Suspension of Sales. The Company or the Agent may, upon notice to the other party in writing (including by email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 3, if receipt of such correspondence is actually acknowledged by any of the individuals to whom the notice is sent, other than via auto-reply) or by telephone (confirmed immediately by verifiable facsimile transmission or email correspondence to each of the individuals of the other party set forth on Schedule 3), suspend any sale of Placement Shares (a “**Suspension**”); *provided, however*, that such Suspension shall not affect or impair any party’s obligations with respect to any Placement Shares sold hereunder prior to the receipt of

such notice. While a Suspension is in effect, any obligation under Sections 7(l), 7(m), and 7(n) with respect to the delivery of certificates, opinions, or comfort letters to the Agent, shall be waived. Each of the parties agrees that no such notice under this Section 4 shall be effective against any other party unless it is made to one of the individuals named on Schedule 3 hereto, as such schedule may be amended from time to time. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, during any period in which the Company is in possession of material non-public information, the Company and the Agent agree that (i) no sale of Placement Shares will take place, (ii) the Company shall not request the sale of any Placement Shares, and (iii) the Agent shall not be obligated to sell or offer to sell any Placement Shares.

5. Sale and Delivery to the Agent; Settlement.

- (a) Sale of Placement Shares. The Company acknowledges and agrees that (i) there can be no assurance that the Agent will be successful in selling Placement Shares, (ii) the Agent will incur no liability or obligation to the Company or any other person or entity if it does not sell Placement Shares for any reason other than a failure by the Agent to use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices and applicable law and regulations to sell such Placement Shares as required under this Agreement and (iii) the Agent shall be under no obligation to purchase Placement Shares on a principal basis pursuant to this Agreement, except as otherwise agreed by the Agent and the Company.
- (b) Settlement of Placement Shares. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable Placement Notice, settlement for sales of Placement Shares will occur on the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Trading Day (or such earlier day as is industry practice for regular-way trading) following the date on which such sales are made (each, a “Settlement Date”). The Agent shall notify the Company of each sale of Placement Shares no later than the opening of the Trading Day immediately following the Trading Day on which it has made sales of Placement Shares hereunder. The amount of proceeds to be delivered to the Company on a Settlement Date against receipt of the Placement Shares sold (the “Net Proceeds”) will be equal to the aggregate sales price received by the Agent, after deduction for (i) the Agent’s commission, discount or other compensation for such sales payable by the Company pursuant to Section 2 hereof, and (ii) any transaction fees imposed by any Governmental Authority in respect of such sales.
- (c) Delivery of Placement Shares. On or before each Settlement Date, the Company will, or will cause its transfer agent to, electronically transfer the Placement Shares being sold by crediting the Agent’s or its designee’s account (provided the Agent shall have given the Company written notice of such designee at least one Trading Day prior to the Settlement Date) at The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit and Withdrawal at Custodian System or by such other means of delivery as may be mutually agreed upon by the parties hereto which in all cases shall be freely tradable, transferable, registered shares in good deliverable form. On each Settlement Date, the Agent will deliver the related Net Proceeds in same day funds to an account designated by the Company on, or prior to, the Settlement Date. The Company agrees that if the Company, or its transfer agent (if applicable), defaults in its obligation to deliver Placement Shares on a Settlement Date through no fault of the Agent, the Company agrees that in addition to and in no way limiting the rights and obligations set forth in Section 10(a) hereto, it will (i) hold the Agent harmless against any loss, claim, damage, or expense (including reasonable legal fees and expenses), as incurred, arising out of or in connection with such

default by the Company or its transfer agent (if applicable) and (ii) pay to the Agent any commission, discount, or other compensation to which it would otherwise have been entitled absent such default.

- (d) Denominations; Registration. If the Placement Shares are not being delivered in book-entry form through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, certificates for the Placement Shares, if any, shall be in such denominations and registered in such names as the Agent may request in writing at least one full Business Day (as defined below) before the applicable Settlement Date. The certificates for the Placement Shares, if any, will be made available by the Company for examination and packaging by the Agent in The City of New York not later than noon (New York time) on the Business Day prior to the applicable Settlement Date.
  - (e) Limitations on Offering Size. Under no circumstances shall the Company cause or request the offer or sale of any Placement Shares if, after giving effect to the sale of such Placement Shares, the aggregate gross sales proceeds of Placement Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement would exceed the lesser of (A) together with all sales of Placement Shares under this Agreement, the Maximum Amount and (B) the amount authorized from time to time to be issued and sold under this Agreement by the Company's board of directors, a duly authorized committee thereof or a duly authorized executive committee. Under no circumstances shall the Company cause or request the offer or sale of any Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement at a price lower than the minimum price authorized from time to time by the Company's board of directors, a duly authorized committee thereof or a duly authorized executive committee. Further, under no circumstances shall the Company cause or permit the aggregate offering amount of Placement Shares sold pursuant to this Agreement to exceed the Maximum Amount.
6. Representations and Warranties of the Company. The Company represents and warrants to, and agrees with the Agent that as of the date of this Agreement and as of each Applicable Time (as defined below):
- (a) Registration Statement and Prospectus. The Company and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement meet the requirements for and comply with the applicable conditions set forth in Form S-3 (including General Instructions I.A and I.B) under the Securities Act. The Registration Statement has been filed or will be filed with the Commission and has been or will be declared effective by the Commission under the Securities Act prior to the issuance of any Placement Notices by the Company. The Sales Prospectus will name the Agent as the agent in the section entitled "Plan of Distribution." The Company has not received, and has no notice of, any order of the Commission preventing or suspending the use of the Registration Statement, or threatening or instituting proceedings for that purpose. The Registration Statement and the offer and sale of Placement Shares as contemplated hereby meet the requirements of Rule 415 under the Securities Act and comply in all material respects with said Rule. Any statutes, regulations, contracts or other documents that are required to be described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement have been so described or filed. Copies of the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, and any such amendments or supplements and all Incorporated Documents that were filed with the Commission on or prior to the date of this Agreement have been delivered, or are available through EDGAR, to the Agent and its counsel. The Company has not distributed and, prior to the later to occur of each Settlement Date and completion of the

distribution of the Placement Shares, will not distribute any offering material in connection with the offering or sale of the Placement Shares other than the Registration Statement and the Prospectus and any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus to which the Agent has consented. The Common Stock is registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Exchange Act and is currently listed on the Exchange under the trading symbol "SABS." The Company has taken no action designed to, or likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act, delisting the Common Stock from the Exchange, nor has the Company received any notification that the Commission or the Exchange is contemplating terminating such registration or listing. To the Company's knowledge, it is in compliance with all applicable listing requirements of the Exchange.

- (b) No Misstatement or Omission. The Registration Statement, when it became or becomes effective, and the Prospectus, and any amendment or supplement thereto, on the date of such Prospectus or amendment or supplement, conformed and will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act. At each Settlement Date, the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as of such date, will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act. The Registration Statement, when it became or becomes effective, did not, and will not, contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus and any amendment and supplement thereto, on the date thereof and at each Applicable Time (defined below), did not or will not include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Incorporated Documents in the Prospectus or any Prospectus Supplement did not, and any further documents filed and incorporated by reference therein will not, when filed with the Commission, contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated in such document or necessary to make the statements in such document, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The foregoing shall not apply to statements in, or omissions from, any such document made in reliance upon, and in conformity with, information furnished to the Company by the Agent in writing specifically for use in the preparation thereof, it being understood and agreed that the only such information furnished by the Agent to the Company consists of "Agent's Information" as defined below.
- (c) Conformity with the Securities Act and Exchange Act. The Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, and the Incorporated Documents in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto, when such documents were or are filed with the Commission under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act or became or become effective under the Securities Act, as the case may be, conformed or will conform in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, as applicable.
- (d) Financial Information. The consolidated financial statements of the Company included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, together with the related notes and schedules, present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) as of the dates indicated and the consolidated results of operations, cash flows and changes in stockholders' equity of the Company for the periods specified and have

been prepared in compliance with the requirements of the Securities Act and Exchange Act and in conformity with U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (“**GAAP**”) applied on a consistent basis during the periods involved; the other financial and statistical data with respect to the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, are accurately and fairly presented and prepared on a basis consistent with the financial statements and books and records of the Company; there are no financial statements (historical or pro forma) that are required to be included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, or the Prospectus that are not included or incorporated by reference as required; the Company and the Subsidiaries (as defined below) do not have any material liabilities or obligations, direct or contingent (including any off-balance sheet obligations), not described in the Registration Statement (excluding the exhibits thereto), and the Prospectus; and all disclosures contained or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses, if any, regarding “non-GAAP financial measures” (as such term is defined by the rules and regulations of the Commission) comply with Regulation G of the Exchange Act and Item 10 of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act, to the extent applicable. The interactive data in eXtensible Business Reporting Language included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus fairly presents the information called for in all material respects and has been prepared in accordance with the Commission’s rules and guidelines applicable thereto.

- (e) Conformity with EDGAR Filing. The Prospectus delivered to the Agent for use in connection with the sale of the Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement will be identical to the versions of the Prospectus created to be transmitted to the Commission for filing via EDGAR, except to the extent permitted by Regulation S-T.
- (f) Organization. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are duly organized, validly existing as a corporation and in good standing under the laws of their respective jurisdictions of organization. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are duly licensed or qualified as a foreign corporation for transaction of business and in good standing under the laws of each other jurisdiction in which their respective ownership or lease of property or the conduct of their respective businesses requires such license or qualification, and have all corporate power and authority necessary to own or hold their respective properties and to conduct their respective businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing or have such power or authority would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a material adverse effect or would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on or affecting the assets, business, operations, earnings, properties, condition (financial or otherwise), prospects, stockholders’ equity or results of operations of the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, or prevent or materially interfere with consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby (a “**Material Adverse Effect**”).
- (g) Subsidiaries. The subsidiaries set forth on Schedule 4 (collectively, the “**Subsidiaries**”), are the Company’s only significant subsidiaries (as such term is defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated by the Commission). Except as set forth in the Registration Statement and in the Prospectus, the Company owns, directly or indirectly, all of the equity interests of the Subsidiaries free and clear of any lien, charge, security interest, encumbrance, right of first

refusal or other restriction, and all the equity interests of the Subsidiaries are validly issued and are fully paid, nonassessable and free of preemptive and similar rights. No Subsidiary is currently prohibited, directly or indirectly, from paying any dividends to the Company, from making any other distribution on such Subsidiary's capital stock, from repaying to the Company any loans or advances to such Subsidiary from the Company or from transferring any of such Subsidiary's property or assets to the Company or any other Subsidiary of the Company.

- (h) No Violation or Default. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is (i) in violation of its charter or by-laws or similar organizational documents; (ii) in default, and no event has occurred that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would constitute such a default, in the due performance or observance of any term, covenant or condition contained in any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, loan agreement or other agreement or instrument to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries are subject; or (iii) in violation of any law or statute or any judgment, order, rule or regulation of any Governmental Authority, except, in the case of each of clauses (ii) and (iii) above, for any such violation or default that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect or which is set forth in the Prospectus. To the Company's knowledge, no other party under any material contract or other agreement to which it or any of its Subsidiaries is a party is in default in any respect thereunder where such default would reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect, except as set forth in the Prospectus.
- (i) No Material Adverse Change. Subsequent to the respective dates as of which information is given in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the Free Writing Prospectuses, if any (including any Incorporated Documents), there has not been (i) any Material Adverse Effect or the occurrence of any development that the Company reasonably expects will result in a Material Adverse Effect, (ii) any transaction which is material to the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, (iii) any obligation or liability, direct or contingent (including any off-balance sheet obligations), incurred by the Company or any Subsidiary, which is material to the Company and the Subsidiaries taken as a whole, (iv) any material change in the capital stock or outstanding long-term indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or (v) any dividend or distribution of any kind declared, paid or made on the capital stock of the Company or any Subsidiary, other than in each case above in the ordinary course of business or as otherwise disclosed in the Registration Statement or Prospectus (including any Incorporated Documents).
- (j) Capitalization. The issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company have been validly issued, are fully paid and nonassessable and, other than as disclosed in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, are not subject to any preemptive rights, rights of first refusal or similar rights. The Company has an authorized, issued and outstanding capitalization as set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as of the dates referred to therein (other than the grant of additional options or other equity awards under the Company's existing equity incentive plans, or changes in the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock of the Company due to the issuance of shares upon the exercise or conversion of securities exercisable for, or convertible into, Common Stock outstanding on the date hereof) and such

authorized capital stock conforms to the description thereof set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus. The description of the securities of the Company in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus is complete and accurate in all material respects. Except as disclosed in or contemplated by the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as of the date referred to therein, the Company does not have outstanding any options to purchase, or any rights or warrants to subscribe for, or any securities or obligations convertible into, or exchangeable for, or any contracts or commitments to issue or sell, any shares of capital stock or other securities.

- (k) Authorization; Enforceability. The Company has full legal right, power and authority to enter into this Agreement and perform the transactions contemplated hereby. This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and is a legal, valid and binding agreement of the Company enforceable in accordance with its terms, except as rights to indemnification hereunder may be limited by federal or state securities laws and except to the extent that enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting creditors' rights generally and by general equitable principles.
- (l) Authorization of Placement Shares. The Placement Shares, when issued and delivered pursuant to the terms approved by the board of directors of the Company or a duly authorized committee thereof, or a duly authorized executive committee, against payment therefor as provided herein, will be duly and validly authorized and issued and fully paid and nonassessable, free and clear of any pledge, lien, encumbrance, security interest or other claim, including any statutory or contractual preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal or other similar rights, and will be registered pursuant to Section 12 of the Exchange Act. The Placement Shares, when issued, will conform in all material respects to the description thereof set forth in or incorporated into the Prospectus.
- (m) No Consents Required. No consent, approval, authorization, order, registration or qualification of or with any Governmental Authority is required for the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement, the issuance and sale by the Company of the Placement Shares, except for such consents, approvals, authorizations, orders and registrations or qualifications as may be required under applicable state securities laws or by the by-laws and rules of the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ("**FINRA**") or the Exchange in connection with the sale of the Placement Shares by the Agent.
- (n) No Preferential Rights. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, (i) no person, as such term is defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated under the Securities Act (each, a "**Person**"), has the right, contractual or otherwise, to cause the Company to issue or sell to such Person any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company (other than upon the exercise of options or warrants to purchase Common Stock or upon the exercise or vesting of options or other equity awards that may be granted from time to time under the Company's equity compensation plans), (ii) no Person has any preemptive rights, resale rights, rights of first refusal, rights of co-sale, or any other rights (whether pursuant to a "poison pill" provision or otherwise) to purchase any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company, (iii) no Person has the right to act as an underwriter or as a financial advisor to the Company in connection with the

offer and sale of the Common Stock, and (iv) no Person has the right, contractual or otherwise, to require the Company to register under the Securities Act any Common Stock or shares of any other capital stock or other securities of the Company, or to include any such shares or other securities in the Registration Statement or the offering contemplated thereby, whether as a result of the filing or effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the sale of the Placement Shares as contemplated thereby or otherwise.

- (o) Independent Public Accounting Firm. EisnerAmper LLP, or such other accountants (an “**Accountant**”), (i) whose report on the consolidated financial statements of the Company is filed with the Commission as part of the Company’s most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Commission or (ii) who reviewed the unaudited financial statements, and incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, are and, during the periods covered by their report, were an independent registered public accounting firm within the meaning of the Securities Act and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). To the Company’s knowledge, the Accountant is not in violation of the auditor independence requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (the “**Sarbanes-Oxley Act**”) with respect to the Company.
- (p) Enforceability of Agreements. All agreements between the Company and third parties expressly referenced in the Prospectus are legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except to the extent that (i) enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting creditors’ rights generally and by general equitable principles and (ii) the indemnification provisions of certain agreements may be limited by federal or state securities laws or public policy considerations in respect thereof.
- (q) No Litigation. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, there are no actions, suits or proceedings by or before any Governmental Authority pending, nor, to the Company’s knowledge, any audits or investigations by or before any Governmental Authority to which the Company or a Subsidiary is a party or to which any property of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is the subject that, individually or in the aggregate, would have a Material Adverse Effect and, to the Company’s knowledge, no such actions, suits, proceedings, audits or investigations are threatened or contemplated by any Governmental Authority or threatened by others; and (i) there are no current or pending audits or investigations, actions, suits or proceedings by or before any Governmental Authority that are required under the Securities Act to be described in the Prospectus that are not so described; and (ii) there are no contracts or other documents that are required under the Securities Act to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement that are not so filed.
- (r) Consents and Permits. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries have made all filings, applications and submissions required by, possesses and is operating in compliance with, all approvals, licenses, certificates, certifications, clearances, consents, grants, exemptions, marks, notifications, orders, permits and other authorizations issued by, the appropriate federal, state or foreign Governmental Authority (including, without limitation, the United States Food and Drug Administration (the “**FDA**”), the United States Drug Enforcement Administration or any other foreign, federal, state, provincial, court or local government or regulatory authorities including self-regulatory

organizations engaged in the regulation of clinical trials, pharmaceuticals, biologics or biohazardous substances or materials) necessary for the ownership or lease of their respective properties or to conduct its businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (collectively, “**Permits**”), except for such Permits the failure of which to possess, obtain or make the same would not have a Material Adverse Effect; the Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with the terms and conditions of all such Permits, except where the failure to be in compliance would not have a Material Adverse Effect; all of the Permits are valid and in full force and effect, except where any invalidity, individually or in the aggregate, would not be reasonably expected to have a Material Adverse Effect; and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has received any written notice relating to the limitation, revocation, cancellation, suspension, modification or non-renewal of any such Permit which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, would have a Material Adverse Effect, or has any reason to believe that any such license, certificate, permit or authorization will not be renewed in the ordinary course. To the extent required by applicable laws and regulations of the FDA, the Company or the applicable Subsidiary has submitted to the FDA an Investigational New Drug Application or amendment or supplement thereto for each clinical trial it has conducted or sponsored or is conducting or sponsoring; all such submissions were in material compliance with applicable laws and rules and regulations when submitted and no material deficiencies have been asserted by the FDA with respect to any such submissions. The Company and each Subsidiary possess such valid and current certificates, authorizations or permits issued by the appropriate state, federal or foreign regulatory agencies or bodies necessary to conduct their respective businesses, and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received, or has any reason to believe that it will receive, any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of, or non-compliance with, any such certificate, authorization or permit which, singly or in the aggregate, if the subject of an unfavorable decision, ruling or finding, could result in a Material Adverse Effect.

- (s) Regulatory Filings. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has failed to file with the applicable Governmental Authorities (including, without limitation, the FDA, or any foreign, federal, state, provincial or local Governmental Authority performing functions similar to those performed by the FDA) any required filing, declaration, listing, registration, report or submission, except for such failures that, individually or in the aggregate, would not have a Material Adverse Effect; except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, all such filings, declarations, listings, registrations, reports or submissions were in compliance with applicable laws when filed and no deficiencies have been asserted by any applicable regulatory authority with respect to any such filings, declarations, listings, registrations, reports or submissions, except for any deficiencies that, individually or in the aggregate, would not have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has operated and currently is, in all material respects, in compliance with the United States Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, all applicable rules and regulations of the FDA and other federal, state, local and foreign Governmental Authority exercising comparable authority. The Company has no knowledge of any studies, tests or trials not described in the Prospectus the results of which reasonably call into question in any material respect the results of the studies, tests and trials described in the Prospectus.

- (t) Intellectual Property. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries own, possess, license or have other rights to use all foreign and domestic patents, patent applications, trade and service marks, trade and service mark registrations, trade names, copyrights, licenses, inventions, trade secrets, technology, Internet domain names, know-how and other intellectual property described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as being owned or licensed by them (collectively, the “**Intellectual Property**”), necessary for the conduct of their respective businesses as currently conducted or as currently proposed to be conducted. Except as disclosed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus (i) there are no rights of third parties to any such Intellectual Property owned by the Company and its Subsidiaries; (ii) to the Company’s knowledge, there is no infringement by third parties of any such Intellectual Property; (iii) there is no pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the Company’s and its Subsidiaries’ rights in or to any such Intellectual Property, and the Company is unaware of any facts which could form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim; (iv) there is no pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others challenging the validity or scope of any such Intellectual Property; (v) there is no pending or, to the Company’s knowledge, threatened action, suit, proceeding or claim by others that the Company and its Subsidiaries infringe or otherwise violate any patent, trademark, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary rights of others; or would, upon the commercialization of any product or service described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus as under development, infringe or violate, any patent, trademark, trade name, service name, copyright, trade secret or other proprietary rights of others, and the Company is unaware of any facts which would form a reasonable basis for any such action, suit, proceeding or claim; (vi) to the Company’s knowledge, there is no third-party U.S. patent or published U.S. patent application which contains claims for which an Interference Proceeding (as defined in 35 U.S.C. § 135) has been commenced against any patent or patent application described in the Prospectus as being owned by or licensed to the Company; and (vii) the Company and its Subsidiaries have complied with the terms of each agreement pursuant to which Intellectual Property has been licensed to the Company or such Subsidiary, and all such agreements are in full force and effect, except, in the case of any of clauses (i)-(vii) above, for any such infringement by third parties or any such pending or threatened suit, action, proceeding or claim as would not, individually or in the aggregate, result in a Material Adverse Effect. The Company and its Subsidiaries have taken reasonable steps to protect, maintain and safeguard their Intellectual Property, including the execution of appropriate nondisclosure, confidentiality agreements and invention assignment agreements and invention assignments with their employees, and, to the Company’s knowledge, no employee of the Company is in or has been in material violation of any term of any employment contract, patent disclosure agreement, invention assignment agreement, non-competition agreement, non-solicitation agreement, nondisclosure agreement, or any restrictive covenant to or with a former employer where the basis of such violation relates to such employee’s employment with the Company.
- (u) Clinical Studies. The preclinical studies and tests and clinical trials described in, or the results of which are referred to in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus were, and, if still pending, are being conducted in all material respects in accordance with the experimental protocols, procedures and controls designed and approved for such studies and pursuant to, where applicable, accepted professional and scientific standards for products or product

candidates comparable to those being developed by the Company; the descriptions of such studies, tests and trials, and the results thereof, contained in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus are accurate and complete in all material respects and fairly presents the data derived from such studies; the Company and its Subsidiaries are not aware of any tests, studies or trials not described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus, the results of which reasonably call into question the results of the tests, studies and trials described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus and the Company has made all such filings and obtained all such approvals as may be required by the FDA or any committee thereof or from any other foreign, state or local Governmental Authority with respect to such clinical trials; and the Company has not received any written notice or correspondence from the FDA or any foreign, state or local Governmental Authority exercising comparable authority or any institutional review board or comparable authority requiring the termination, suspension, clinical hold or material modification of any tests, studies or trials.

- (v) Market Capitalization. At the time the Registration Statement was or will be originally declared effective, and at the time the Company's most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K was filed with the Commission, the Company met or will meet the then applicable requirements for the use of Form S-3 under the Securities Act, including, but not limited to, General Instruction I.B.1 of Form S-3. The Company is not a shell company (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act) and has not been a shell company for at least 12 calendar months previously and if it has been a shell company at any time previously, has filed current Form 10 information (as defined in Instruction I.B.6 of Form S-3) with the Commission at least 12 calendar months previously reflecting its status as an entity that is not a shell company.
- (w) FINRA Matters. The information provided to the Agent by the Company for purposes of the Agent's compliance with applicable FINRA rules in connection with the offering of the Placement Shares is true, complete, and correct and compliant with FINRA's rules.
- (x) No Material Defaults. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries has defaulted on any installment on indebtedness for borrowed money or on any rental on one or more long-term leases, which defaults, individually or in the aggregate, would have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has not filed a report pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act since the filing of its last Annual Report on Form 10-K, indicating that it (i) has failed to pay any dividend or sinking fund installment on preferred stock or (ii) has defaulted on any installment on indebtedness for borrowed money or on any rental on one or more long-term leases, which defaults, individually or in the aggregate, would have a Material Adverse Effect.
- (y) Certain Market Activities. Neither the Company, nor any of the Subsidiaries, nor any of their respective directors, officers or controlling persons has taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed, or that has constituted or would reasonably be expected to cause or result in, under the Exchange Act or otherwise, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company or any "reference security" (as defined in Rule 100 of Regulation M under the Exchange Act ("**Regulation M**") with respect to the Common Stock, whether to facilitate the sale or resale of the Placement Shares, and has taken no action that would directly or indirectly violate Regulation M.

- (z) Broker/Dealer Relationships. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries (i) is required to register as a “broker” or “dealer” in accordance with the provisions of the Exchange Act or (ii) directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls or is a “person associated with a member” or “associated person of a member” (within the meaning set forth in the FINRA Manual).
- (aa) No Reliance. The Company has not relied upon the Agent or legal counsel for the Agent for any legal, tax or accounting advice in connection with the offering and sale of the Placement Shares.
- (bb) Taxes. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries have filed all federal, state, local and foreign tax returns which have been required to be filed and paid all taxes shown thereon through the date hereof, to the extent that such taxes have become due and are not being contested in good faith, except where the failure to so file or pay would not have a Material Adverse Effect. Except as otherwise disclosed in or contemplated by the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, no tax deficiency has been determined adversely to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries which has had, or would have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has no knowledge of any federal, state or other governmental tax deficiency, penalty or assessment which has been or might be asserted or threatened against it which would have a Material Adverse Effect.
- (cc) Title to Real and Personal Property. Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all items of real property owned by them, good and valid title to all personal property described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus as being owned by them, in each case free and clear of all liens, encumbrances and claims, except those matters that (i) do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries or (ii) would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. Any real or personal property described in the Registration Statement or Prospectus as being leased by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries is held by them under valid, existing and enforceable leases, except those that (A) do not materially interfere with the use made or proposed to be made of such property by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or (B) would not be reasonably expected, individually or in the aggregate, to have a Material Adverse Effect. Each of the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries complies with all applicable codes, laws and regulations (including, without limitation, building and zoning codes, laws and regulations and laws relating to access to such properties), except if and to the extent disclosed in the Registration Statement or Prospectus or except for such failures to comply that would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to interfere in any material respect with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and its Subsidiaries or otherwise have a Material Adverse Effect. None of the Company or its subsidiaries has received from any Governmental Authorities any notice of any condemnation of, or zoning change affecting, the properties of the Company and its Subsidiaries, and the Company knows of no such condemnation or zoning change which is threatened, except for such that would not reasonably be expected to interfere in any material respect with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and its Subsidiaries or otherwise have a Material Adverse Effect, individually or in the aggregate.

- (dd) **Environmental Laws.** Except as set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, the Company and its Subsidiaries (i) are in compliance with any and all applicable federal, state, local and foreign laws, rules, regulations, decisions and orders relating to the protection of human health and safety, the environment or hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants (collectively, “**Environmental Laws**”); (ii) have received and are in compliance with all permits, licenses or other approvals required of them under applicable Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus; and (iii) have not received notice of any actual or potential liability for the investigation or remediation of any disposal or release of hazardous or toxic substances or wastes, pollutants or contaminants, except, in the case of any of clauses (i), (ii) or (iii) above, for any such failure to comply or failure to receive required permits, licenses, other approvals or liability as would not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect.
- (ee) **Disclosure Controls.** The Company and each of its Subsidiaries maintain systems of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurance that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management’s general or specific authorizations; (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain asset accountability; (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management’s general or specific authorization; (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with the existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences; and (v) the interactive data in eXtensible Business Reporting Language included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus fairly presents the information called for in all material respects and is prepared in accordance with the Commission’s rules and guidelines applicable thereto. Except as set forth in the Prospectus, the Company’s internal control over financial reporting is effective and the Company is not aware of any material weaknesses in its internal control over financial reporting. Other than as set forth in the Prospectus, since the date of the latest audited financial statements of the Company included in the Prospectus, there has been no change in the Company’s internal control over financial reporting that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company’s internal control over financial reporting. The Company has established disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15 and 15d-15) for the Company and designed such disclosure controls and procedures to ensure that material information relating to the Company and each of its Subsidiaries is made known to the certifying officers by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K or Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, as the case may be, is being prepared. The Company’s certifying officers have evaluated the effectiveness of the Company’s disclosure controls and procedures as of a date within 90 days prior to the filing date of the Form 10-K for the fiscal year most recently ended (such date, the “**Evaluation Date**”). The Company presented in its Form 10-K for the fiscal year most recently ended the conclusions of the certifying officers about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures based on their evaluations as of the Evaluation Date. Other than as set forth in the Prospectus, since the Evaluation Date, there have been no significant changes in the Company’s internal controls (as such term is defined in Item 307(b) of Regulation S-K under the Securities Act) or, to the Company’s knowledge, in other factors that could significantly affect the Company’s internal controls.

- (ff) Sarbanes-Oxley. There is and has been no failure on the part of the Company or any of the Company’s directors or officers, in their capacities as such, to comply in all material respects with any applicable provisions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. Each of the principal executive officer and the principal financial officer of the Company (or each former principal executive officer of the Company and each former principal financial officer of the Company as applicable) has made all certifications required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act with respect to all reports, schedules, forms, statements and other documents required to be filed by it or furnished by it to the Commission. For purposes of the preceding sentence, “principal executive officer” and “principal financial officer” shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Sarbanes-Oxley Act.
- (gg) Finder’s Fees. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries has incurred any liability for any finder’s fees, brokerage commissions or similar payments in connection with the transactions herein contemplated, except as may otherwise exist with respect to the Agent pursuant to this Agreement.
- (hh) Labor Disputes. No labor disturbance by or dispute with employees of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is threatened which would result in a Material Adverse Effect.
- (ii) Investment Company Act. Neither the Company nor any of the Subsidiaries is or, after giving effect to the offering and sale of the Placement Shares and the application of the Net Proceeds, will be an “investment company” or an entity “controlled” by an “investment company,” as such terms are defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “**Investment Company Act**”).
- (jj) Operations. The operations of the Company and its Subsidiaries are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial record keeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, the money laundering statutes of all jurisdictions to which the Company or its Subsidiaries are subject, the rules and regulations thereunder and any related or similar rules, regulations or guidelines, issued, administered or enforced by any Governmental Authority (collectively, the “**Money Laundering Laws**”); and no action, suit or proceeding by or before any Governmental Authority involving the Company or any of its Subsidiaries with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened.
- (kk) Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements. There are no transactions, arrangements and other relationships between and/or among the Company, and/or any of its affiliates and any unconsolidated entity, including, but not limited to, any structured finance, special purpose or limited purpose entity (each, an “**Off-Balance Sheet Transaction**”) that could reasonably be expected to affect materially the Company’s liquidity or the availability of or requirements for its capital resources, including those Off-Balance Sheet Transactions described in the Commission’s Statement about Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Conditions and Results of Operations (Release Nos. 33-8056; 34-45321; FR-61), required to be described in the Prospectus which have not been described as required.

- (ll) Underwriter Agreements. The Company is not a party to any agreement with an agent or underwriter for any other “at the market” or continuous equity transaction.
- (mm) ERISA. To the knowledge of the Company, each material employee benefit plan, within the meaning of Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“**ERISA**”), that is maintained, administered or contributed to by the Company or any of its affiliates for employees or former employees of the Company and any of its Subsidiaries has been maintained in material compliance with its terms and the requirements of any applicable statutes, orders, rules and regulations, including but not limited to ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “**Code**”); no prohibited transaction, within the meaning of Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code, has occurred which would result in a material liability to the Company with respect to any such plan excluding transactions effected pursuant to a statutory or administrative exemption; and for each such plan that is subject to the funding rules of Section 412 of the Code or Section 302 of ERISA, no “accumulated funding deficiency” as defined in Section 412 of the Code has been incurred, whether or not waived, and the fair market value of the assets of each such plan (excluding for these purposes accrued but unpaid contributions) exceeds the present value of all benefits accrued under such plan determined using reasonable actuarial assumptions.
- (nn) Forward-Looking Statements. No forward-looking statement (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act) (a “**Forward-Looking Statement**”) contained in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus has been made or reaffirmed without a reasonable basis or has been disclosed other than in good faith.
- (oo) Agent’s Purchases. The Company acknowledges and agrees that the Agent has informed the Company that the Agent may, to the extent permitted under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, purchase and sell Common Stock for its own account while this Agreement is in effect, *provided*, that the Company shall not be deemed to have authorized or consented to any such purchases or sales by the Agent.
- (pp) Margin Rules. Neither the issuance, sale and delivery of the Placement Shares nor the application of the proceeds thereof by the Company as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus will violate Regulation T, U or X of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System or any other regulation of such Board of Governors.
- (qq) Insurance. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries carry, or are covered by, insurance in such amounts and covering such risks as the Company and each of its Subsidiaries reasonably believe are adequate for the conduct of their properties and as is customary for companies engaged in similar businesses in similar industries. The Company has no reason to believe that it or any of its Subsidiaries will not be able (i) to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such policies expire or (ii) to obtain comparable coverage from similar institutions as may be necessary or appropriate to conduct its business as now conducted and at a cost that would not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has been denied any insurance coverage which it has sought or for which it has applied.

- (rr) No Improper Practices. (i) Neither the Company nor the Subsidiaries, nor any director, officer, or employee of the Company or any Subsidiary nor, to the Company's knowledge, any agent, affiliate or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary has, in the past five years, made any unlawful contributions to any candidate for any political office (or failed fully to disclose any contribution in violation of applicable law) or made any contribution or other payment to any official of, or candidate for, any federal, state, municipal, or foreign office or other person charged with similar public or quasi-public duty in violation of any applicable law or of the character required to be disclosed in the Prospectus; (ii) no relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company or any Subsidiary or any affiliate of any of them, on the one hand, and the directors, officers and stockholders of the Company or any Subsidiary, on the other hand, that is required by the Securities Act to be described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus that is not so described; (iii) no relationship, direct or indirect, exists between or among the Company or any Subsidiary or any affiliate of them, on the one hand, and the directors, officers, or stockholders of the Company or any Subsidiary, on the other hand, that is required by the rules of FINRA to be described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus that is not so described; (iv) except as described in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, there are no material outstanding loans or advances or material guarantees of indebtedness by the Company or any Subsidiary to or for the benefit of any of their respective officers or directors or any of the members of the families of any of them; and (v) the Company has not offered, or caused any placement agent to offer, Common Stock to any person with the intent to influence unlawfully (A) a customer or supplier of the Company or any Subsidiary to alter the customer's or supplier's level or type of business with the Company or any Subsidiary or (B) a trade journalist or publication to write or publish favorable information about the Company or any Subsidiary or any of their respective products or services, and, (vi) neither the Company nor any Subsidiary nor any director, officer or employee of the Company or any Subsidiary nor, to the Company's knowledge, any agent, affiliate or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary has (A) violated or is in violation of any applicable provision of the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, or any other applicable anti-bribery or anti-corruption law (collectively, "**Anti-Corruption Laws**"), (B) promised, offered, provided, attempted to provide or authorized the provision of anything of value, directly or indirectly, to any person for the purpose of obtaining or retaining business, influencing any act or decision of the recipient, or securing any improper advantage; or (C) made any payment of funds of the Company or any Subsidiary or received or retained any funds in violation of any Anti-Corruption Laws.
- (ss) Status Under the Securities Act. The Company was not and is not an ineligible issuer as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act at the times specified in Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act in connection with the offering of the Placement Shares.
- (tt) No Misstatement or Omission in an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus. Each Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, as of its issue date and as of each Applicable Time (as defined in Section 23 below), did not, does not and will not include any information that conflicted, conflicts or will conflict with the information contained in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, including any incorporated document deemed to be a part thereof that has not been superseded or modified. The foregoing sentence does not apply to statements in or omissions from any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus based upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Company by the Agent specifically for use therein.

- (uu) **No Conflicts.** Neither the execution of this Agreement, nor the issuance, offering or sale of the Placement Shares, nor the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated herein and therein, nor the compliance by the Company with the terms and provisions hereof and thereof will conflict with, or will result in a breach of, any of the terms and provisions of, or has constituted or will constitute a default under, or has resulted in or will result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance upon any property or assets of the Company pursuant to the terms of any contract or other agreement to which the Company may be bound or to which any of the property or assets of the Company is subject, except (i) such conflicts, breaches or defaults as may have been waived and (ii) such conflicts, breaches and defaults that would not have a Material Adverse Effect; nor will such action result (x) in any violation of the provisions of the organizational or governing documents of the Company, or (y) in any material violation of the provisions of any statute or any order, rule or regulation applicable to the Company or of any Governmental Authority having jurisdiction over the Company.
- (vv) **Sanctions.** (i) The Company represents that, neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries (collectively, the “**Entity**”) or any director, officer, employee, agent, affiliate or representative of the Entity, is a government, individual, or Person that is, or is owned or controlled by a Person that is:
- (A) the subject of any sanctions administered or enforced by the U.S. Department of Treasury’s Office of Foreign Assets Control (“**OFAC**”), the United Nations Security Council, the European Union, His Majesty’s Treasury, or other relevant sanctions authorities, including, without limitation, designation on OFAC’s Specially Designated Nationals and Blocked Persons List or OFAC’s Foreign Sanctions Evaders List (as amended, collectively, “**Sanctions**”), nor
  - (B) located, organized or resident in a country or territory that is the subject of Sanctions that broadly prohibit dealings with that country or territory (including, without limitation, the so-called Donetsk People’s Republic, the so-called Luhansk People’s Republic, the Crimea Region of Ukraine, the non-government controlled areas of the Zaporizhzhia and Kherson Regions, Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Russia and Venezuela) (the “**Sanctioned Countries**”).
- (ii) The Entity represents and covenants that it will not, directly or indirectly, use the proceeds of the offering, or lend, contribute or otherwise make available such proceeds to any subsidiary, joint venture partner or other Person:
- (A) to fund or facilitate any activities or business of or with any Person or in any country or territory that, at the time of such funding or facilitation, is the subject of Sanctions or is a Sanctioned Country; or
  - (B) in any other manner that will result in a violation of Sanctions by any Person (including any Person participating in the offering, whether as underwriter, advisor, investor or otherwise).
- (iii) The Entity represents and covenants that, except as detailed in the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, since April 24, 2019, it has not engaged in, is not now

engaging in, and will not engage in, any dealings or transactions with any Person, or in any country or territory, that at the time of the dealing or transaction is or was the subject of Sanctions or is or was a Sanctioned Country.

(ww) Stock Transfer Taxes. On each Settlement Date, all stock transfer or other taxes (other than income taxes) which are required to be paid in connection with the sale and transfer of the Placement Shares to be sold hereunder will be, or will have been, fully paid or provided for by the Company and all laws imposing such taxes will be or will have been fully complied with.

(xx) Compliance with Laws. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are in compliance with all applicable laws, regulations and statutes (including all environmental laws and regulations) in the jurisdictions in which it carries on business; the Company has not received a notice of non-compliance, nor knows of, nor has reasonable grounds to know of, any facts that could give rise to a notice of non-compliance with any such laws, regulations and statutes, and is not aware of any pending change or contemplated change to any applicable law or regulation or governmental position; in each case that would materially adversely affect the business of the Company or the business or legal environment under which the Company operates. Each of the Company and its Subsidiaries: (A) is and at all times has been in compliance with all statutes, rules, or regulations applicable to the ownership, testing, development, manufacture, packaging, processing, use, distribution, marketing, labeling, promotion, sale, offer for sale, storage, import, export or disposal of any product manufactured or distributed by the Company or its Subsidiaries ("Applicable Laws"), except as could not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect; (B) has not received any FDA Form 483, notice of adverse finding, warning letter, untitled letter or other correspondence or notice from the FDA or any other Governmental Authority alleging or asserting noncompliance with any Applicable Laws or any licenses, certificates, approvals, clearances, authorizations, permits and supplements or amendments thereto required by any such Applicable Laws ("Authorizations"); (C) possesses all material Authorizations and such Authorizations are valid and in full force and effect and are not in material violation of any term of any such Authorizations; (D) has not received notice of any claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action from any Governmental Authority or third party alleging that any product operation or activity is in violation of any Applicable Laws or Authorizations and has no knowledge that any such Governmental Authority or third party is considering any such claim, litigation, arbitration, action, suit, investigation or proceeding; (E) has not received notice that any Governmental Authority has taken, is taking or intends to take action to limit, suspend, modify or revoke any Authorizations and has no knowledge that any such Governmental Authority is considering such action; (F) has filed, obtained, maintained or submitted all material reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments as required by any Applicable Laws or Authorizations and that all such reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments were complete and correct on the date filed (or were corrected or supplemented by a subsequent submission); and (G) has not, either voluntarily or involuntarily, initiated, conducted, or issued or caused to be initiated, conducted or issued, any recall, market withdrawal or replacement, safety alert, post sale warning, "dear healthcare provider" letter, or other notice or action relating to the alleged lack of safety or efficacy of any product or any alleged product defect

or violation and, to the Company's knowledge, no third party has initiated, conducted or intends to initiate any such notice or action.

(yy) Statistical and Market-Related Data. The statistical, demographic and market-related data included in the Registration Statement and Prospectus are based on or derived from sources that the Company believes to be reliable and accurate or represent the Company's good faith estimates that are made on the basis of data derived from such sources.

(zz) Cybersecurity. The Company and its Subsidiaries' information technology assets and equipment, computers, systems, networks, hardware, software, websites, applications, and databases (collectively, "**IT Systems**") are adequate for, and operate and perform in all material respects as required in connection with the operation of the business of the Company and its Subsidiaries as currently conducted, free and clear of all material bugs, errors, defects, Trojan horses, time bombs, malware and other corruptants. The Company and its Subsidiaries have implemented and maintained commercially reasonable physical, technical and administrative controls, policies, procedures, and safeguards to maintain and protect their material confidential information and the integrity, continuous operation, redundancy and security of all IT Systems and data, including all "Personal Data" (defined below) and all sensitive, confidential or regulated data ("**Confidential Data**") used in connection with their businesses. "**Personal Data**" means (i) a natural person's name, street address, telephone number, e-mail address, photograph, social security number or tax identification number, driver's license number, passport number, credit card number, bank information, or customer or account number; (ii) any information which would qualify as "personally identifying information" under the Federal Trade Commission Act, as amended; (iii) "personal data" as defined by GDPR; (iv) any information which would qualify as "protected health information" under the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (collectively, "**HIPAA**"); (v) any "personal information" as defined by the California Consumer Privacy Act ("**CCPA**"); and (vi) any other piece of information that allows the identification of such natural person, or his or her family, or permits the collection or analysis of any data related to an identified person's health or sexual orientation. There have been no material breaches, violations, outages or unauthorized uses of or accesses to same, except for those that have been remedied without material cost or liability or the duty to notify any other person, nor any incidents under internal review or investigations relating to the same. The Company and its Subsidiaries are presently in material compliance with all applicable laws or statutes and all judgments, orders, rules and regulations of any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority, internal policies and contractual obligations relating to the privacy and security of IT Systems, Confidential Data, and Personal Data. The Company and its Subsidiaries have taken reasonable and appropriate steps to protect and secure the Company's IT Systems, Confidential Data, and Personal Data from unauthorized use, access, misappropriation or modification.

(aaa) Compliance with Data Privacy Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries are, and at all prior times were, in material compliance with all applicable state and federal data privacy and security laws and regulations, including without limitation HIPAA, CCPA, and the European Union General Data Protection Regulation ("**GDPR**") (EU 2016/679) (collectively, the "**Privacy Laws**"). To ensure compliance with the Privacy Laws, the Company has in place,

complies with, and takes appropriate steps to ensure compliance in all material respects with their policies and procedures relating to data privacy and security and the collection, storage, use, processing, disclosure, handling, and analysis of Personal Data and Confidential Data (the “**Policies**”). None of the Company’s disclosures made or contained in any Policy have been inaccurate or in violation of any applicable laws and regulatory rules or requirements in any material respect. The Company further certifies that neither it nor any Subsidiary: (i) has received notice of any actual or potential liability under or relating to, or actual or potential violation of, any of the Privacy Laws, and has no knowledge of any event or condition that would reasonably be expected to result in any such notice; (ii) is currently conducting or paying for, in whole or in part, any investigation, remediation, or other corrective action pursuant to any Privacy Law; or (iii) is a party to any order, decree, or agreement that imposes any obligation or liability under any Privacy Law.

(bbb) Compliance with Health Care Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries are, and at all times have been, in material compliance with all applicable Health Care Laws. For purposes of this Agreement, “**Health Care Laws**” means: (i) the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. Section 301 et seq.), the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. Section 201 et seq.), and the regulations promulgated thereunder; (ii) all applicable federal, state, local and foreign health care fraud and abuse laws, including, without limitation, the Anti-Kickback Statute (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7b(b)), the Civil False Claims Act (31 U.S.C. Section 3729 et seq.), the criminal false statements law (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7b(a)), 18 U.S.C. Sections 286 and 287, the health care fraud criminal provisions under HIPAA (42 U.S.C. Section 1320d et seq.), the Stark Law (42 U.S.C. Section 1395nn), the civil monetary penalties law (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7a), the exclusion law (42 U.S.C. Section 1320a-7), the Physician Payments Sunshine Act (42 U.S.C. Section 1320-7h), and applicable laws governing government funded or sponsored healthcare programs; (iii) HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (42 U.S.C. Section 17921 et seq.) and comparable state health care data privacy and security laws; (iv) the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010; and (v) licensure, quality, safety and accreditation requirements under applicable federal, state, local or foreign laws or regulatory bodies. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has received written notice of any claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action from any court or arbitrator or governmental or regulatory authority or third party alleging that any product operation or activity is in material violation of any Health Care Laws nor, to the Company’s knowledge, is any such claim, action, suit, proceeding, hearing, enforcement, investigation, arbitration or other action threatened. The Company and its Subsidiaries have filed, maintained or submitted all material reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments as required by any Health Care Laws, and all such reports, documents, forms, notices, applications, records, claims, submissions and supplements or amendments were complete and accurate on the date filed in all material respects (or were corrected or supplemented by a subsequent submission). Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is a party to any corporate integrity agreements, monitoring agreements, consent decrees, settlement orders, or similar agreements with or imposed by any governmental or regulatory authority. Additionally, neither the Company, any of its Subsidiaries nor any of their respective employees, officers, directors, or agents has been excluded, suspended or debarred from participation in any U.S. federal health care program or human clinical research

or, to the knowledge of the Company, is subject to a governmental inquiry, investigation, proceeding, or other similar action that could reasonably be expected to result in debarment, suspension, or exclusion.

(ccc)Emerging Growth Company Status. From the time of the initial filing of the Company's first registration statement with the Commission through the date hereof, the Company has been and is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act (an "**Emerging Growth Company**").

(ddd)Related Party Transactions. There are no business relationships or related party transactions involving the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or any other person required to be described in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus which have not been described as required.

Any certificate signed by an officer of the Company and delivered to the Agent or to counsel for the Agent pursuant to or in connection with this Agreement shall be deemed to be a representation and warranty by the Company, as applicable, to the Agent as to the matters set forth therein.

7. Covenants of the Company. The Company covenants and agrees with the Agent that:

(a) Registration Statement Amendments. After the date of this Agreement and during any period in which a Prospectus relating to any Placement Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or similar rule), (i) the Company will notify the Agent promptly of the time when any subsequent amendment to the Registration Statement, other than Incorporated Documents, has been filed with the Commission and/or has become effective or any subsequent supplement to the Prospectus has been filed and of any request by the Commission for any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus or for additional information, (ii) the Company will prepare and file with the Commission, promptly upon the Agent's request, any amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that, in the Agent's reasonable opinion, may be necessary or advisable in connection with the distribution of the Placement Shares by the Agent (*provided, however*, that the failure of the Agent to make such request shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement and *provided, further*, that the only remedy the Agent shall have with respect to the failure to make such filing shall be to cease making sales under this Agreement until such amendment or supplement is filed); (iii) the Company will not file any amendment or supplement to the Registration Statement or Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares or a security convertible into the Placement Shares unless a copy thereof has been submitted to the Agent within a reasonable period of time before the filing and the Agent has not objected thereto (*provided, however*, that the failure of the Agent to make such objection shall not relieve the Company of any obligation or liability hereunder, or affect the Agent's right to rely on the representations and warranties made by the Company in this Agreement and *provided, further*, that the only remedy the Agent shall have with respect to the failure by the Company to obtain such consent shall be to cease making sales under this Agreement) and the Company will furnish to the Agent at the time of filing

thereof a copy of any document that upon filing is deemed to be incorporated by reference into the Registration Statement or Prospectus, except for those documents available via EDGAR; and (iv) the Company will cause each amendment or supplement to the Prospectus to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act or, in the case of any document to be incorporated therein by reference, to be filed with the Commission as required pursuant to the Exchange Act, within the time period prescribed (the determination to file or not file any amendment or supplement with the Commission under this Section 7(a), based on the Company's reasonable opinion or reasonable objections, shall be made exclusively by the Company).

- (b) Notice of Commission Stop Orders. The Company will advise the Agent, promptly after it receives notice or obtains knowledge thereof, of the issuance or threatened issuance by the Commission of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, of the suspension of the qualification of the Placement Shares for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or of the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for any such purpose; and it will promptly use its commercially reasonable efforts to prevent the issuance of any stop order or to obtain its withdrawal if such a stop order should be issued. The Company will advise the Agent promptly after it receives any request by the Commission for any amendments to the Registration Statement or any amendment or supplements to the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or for additional information related to the offering of the Placement Shares or for additional information related to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus.
- (c) Delivery of Prospectus; Subsequent Changes. During any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered by the Agent under the Securities Act with respect to the offer and sale of the Placement Shares (including in circumstances where such requirement may be satisfied pursuant to Rule 172 under the Securities Act or similar rule), the Company will comply with all requirements imposed upon it by the Securities Act, as from time to time in force, and to file on or before their respective due dates all reports and any definitive proxy or information statements required to be filed by the Company with the Commission pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, 15(d) or any other provision of or under the Exchange Act. If the Company has omitted any information from the Registration Statement pursuant to Rule 430B under the Securities Act, it will use its best efforts to comply with the provisions of and make all requisite filings with the Commission pursuant to said Rule 430B and to notify the Agent promptly of all such filings. If during such period any event occurs as a result of which the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances then existing, not misleading, or if during such period it is necessary to amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus to comply with the Securities Act, the Company will promptly notify the Agent to suspend the offering of Placement Shares during such period and the Company will promptly amend or supplement the Registration Statement or Prospectus (at the expense of the Company) so as to correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance and to prepare and furnish without charge to the Agent and to any dealer in securities as many written and electronic copies as the Agent may from time to time reasonably request of an amended Prospectus or a supplement to the Prospectus which will correct such statement or omission or effect such compliance.

- (d) Listing of Placement Shares. Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company shall have filed a Listing of Additional Shares Notification Form with the Exchange.
- (e) Delivery of Registration Statement and Prospectus. The Company will furnish to the Agent and its counsel (at the expense of the Company) copies of the Registration Statement, the Prospectus (including all Incorporated Documents) and all amendments and supplements to the Registration Statement or Prospectus that are filed with the Commission during any period in which a Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares is required to be delivered under the Securities Act (including all documents filed with the Commission during such period that are deemed to be incorporated by reference therein), in each case as soon as reasonably practicable and in such quantities as the Agent may from time to time reasonably request and, at the Agent's request, will also furnish copies of the Prospectus to each exchange or market on which sales of the Placement Shares may be made; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to furnish any document (other than the Prospectus) to the Agent to the extent such document is available on EDGAR.
- (f) Earning Statement. The Company will make generally available to its security holders as soon as practicable, but in any event not later than 15 months after the end of the Company's current fiscal quarter, an earning statement covering a 12-month period that satisfies the provisions of Section 11(a) and Rule 158 of the Securities Act.
- (g) Use of Proceeds. The Company will use the Net Proceeds as described in the Prospectus in the section entitled "Use of Proceeds."
- (h) Notice of Other Sales. Without the prior written consent of the Agent, the Company will not, directly or indirectly, offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Placement Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock during the period beginning on the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day immediately prior to the date on which any Placement Notice is delivered to the Agent hereunder and ending on the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day immediately following the final Settlement Date with respect to Placement Shares sold pursuant to such Placement Notice (or, if the Placement Notice has been terminated or suspended prior to the sale of all Placement Shares covered by a Placement Notice, the date of such suspension or termination); and will not directly or indirectly in any other "at the market" or continuous equity transaction offer to sell, sell, contract to sell, grant any option to sell or otherwise dispose of any Common Stock (other than the Placement Shares offered pursuant to this Agreement) or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock, warrants or any rights to purchase or acquire, Common Stock prior to the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day immediately following the termination of this Agreement; *provided, however*, that such restrictions will not be required in connection with the Company's issuance or sale of (i) Common Stock, options to purchase Common Stock or Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of options, pursuant to any employee or director stock option or benefits plan, stock ownership plan or dividend reinvestment plan (but not Common Stock subject to a waiver to exceed plan limits in its dividend reinvestment plan) of the Company whether now in effect or hereafter implemented, (ii) Common Stock issuable upon conversion of securities or the exercise of warrants, options or other rights in effect or outstanding, and disclosed in filings by the Company available on EDGAR or otherwise in

writing to the Agent and (iii) Common Stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of Common Stock as consideration for mergers, acquisitions, other business combinations or strategic alliances occurring after the date of this Agreement which are not issued for capital raising purposes.

- (i) Change of Circumstances. The Company will, at any time during the pendency of a Placement Notice, advise the Agent promptly after it shall have received notice or obtained knowledge thereof, of any information or fact that would alter or affect in any material respect any opinion, certificate, letter or other document required to be provided to the Agent pursuant to this Agreement.
- (j) Due Diligence Cooperation. The Company will cooperate with any reasonable due diligence review conducted by the Agent or their representatives in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby, including, without limitation, providing information and making available documents and senior corporate officers, during regular business hours and at the Company's principal offices, as the Agent may reasonably request.
- (k) Required Filings Relating to Placement of Placement Shares. The Company shall disclose, in its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and in its annual report on Form 10-K to be filed by the Company with the Commission from time to time, the number of the Placement Shares sold through the Agent under this Agreement, and the net proceeds to the Company from the sale of the Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement during the relevant quarter or, in the case of an Annual Report on Form 10-K, during the fiscal year covered by such Annual Report and the fourth quarter of such fiscal year. The Company agrees that on such dates as the Securities Act shall require, the Company will (i) file a prospectus supplement with the Commission under the applicable paragraph of Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act (each and every filing date under Rule 424(b), a "**Filing Date**"), which prospectus supplement will set forth, within the relevant period, the amount of Placement Shares sold through the Agent, the Net Proceeds to the Company and the compensation payable by the Company to the Agent with respect to such Placement Shares, and (ii) deliver such number of copies of each such prospectus supplement to each exchange or market on which such sales were effected as may be required by the rules or regulations of such exchange or market.
- (l) Representation Dates; Certificate. (1) Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and (2) each time the Company:
  - (i) files the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares or amends or supplements (other than a prospectus supplement relating solely to an offering of securities other than the Placement Shares) the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares by means of a post-effective amendment, sticker, or supplement but not by means of incorporation of documents by reference into the Registration Statement or the Prospectus relating to the Placement Shares;
  - (ii) files an annual report on Form 10-K under the Exchange Act (including any Form 10-K/A containing amended financial information or a material amendment to the previously filed Form 10-K);

(iii) files its quarterly reports on Form 10-Q under the Exchange Act; or

(iv) files a current report on Form 8-K containing amended financial information (other than information “furnished” pursuant to Items 2.02 or 7.01 of Form 8-K or to provide disclosure pursuant to Item 8.01 of Form 8-K relating to the reclassification of certain properties as discontinued operations in accordance with Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 144) under the Exchange Act (each date of filing of one or more of the documents referred to in clauses (i) through (iv) shall be a “**Representation Date**”);

the Company shall furnish the Agent (but in the case of clause (iv) above only if the Agent reasonably determines that the information contained in such Form 8-K is material) with a certificate dated the Representation Date, in the form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and its counsel, substantially similar to the form previously provided to the Agent and its counsel, modified, as necessary, to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as amended or supplemented. The requirement to provide a certificate under this Section 7(l) shall be waived for any Representation Date occurring at a time a Suspension is in effect, which waiver shall continue until the earlier to occur of the date the Company delivers instructions for the sale of Placement Shares hereunder (which for such calendar quarter shall be considered a Representation Date) and the next occurring Representation Date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company subsequently decides to sell Placement Shares following a Representation Date when a Suspension was in effect and did not provide the Agent with a certificate under this Section 7(l), then before the Company delivers the instructions for the sale of Placement Shares or the Agent sells any Placement Shares pursuant to such instructions, the Company shall provide the Agent with a certificate in conformity with this Section 7(l) dated as of the date that the instructions for the sale of Placement Shares are issued.

(m) Legal Opinion. (1) Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and (2) within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l) for which no waiver is applicable and excluding the date of this Agreement, the Company shall cause to be furnished to the Agent a written opinion and negative assurance letter of Dentons US LLP, or other counsel satisfactory to the Agent, and a written opinion from DLA Piper LLP (US), intellectual property counsel to the Company, with respect to certain intellectual property matters, each in form and substance satisfactory to the Agent and its counsel, substantially similar to the form previously provided to the Agent and its counsel, modified, as necessary, to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as then amended or supplemented; *provided*, that in lieu of such opinions for subsequent periodic filings under the Exchange Act, counsel may furnish the Agent with a letter (a “**Reliance Letter**”) to the effect that the Agent may rely on a prior opinion delivered under this Section 7(m) to the same extent as if it were dated the date of such letter (except that statements in such prior opinion shall be deemed to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus as amended or supplemented as of the date of the Reliance Letter).

(n) Comfort Letter. (1) Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice and (2) within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l) for which no waiver is applicable and excluding the date of this Agreement, the Company shall cause its independent registered public

accounting firm to furnish the Agent letters (the “**Comfort Letters**”), dated the date the Comfort Letter is delivered, which shall meet the requirements set forth in this Section 7(n); *provided*, that if requested by the Agent, the Company shall cause a Comfort Letter to be furnished to the Agent within ten (10) Trading Days of the date of occurrence of any material transaction or event requiring the filing of a Current Report on Form 8-K containing financial information (including the restatement of the Company’s financial statements). The Comfort Letter from the Company’s independent registered public accounting firm shall be in a form and substance satisfactory to the Agent, (i) confirming that they are an independent registered public accounting firm within the meaning of the Securities Act and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (“**PCAOB**”), (ii) stating, as of such date, the conclusions and findings of such firm with respect to the financial information and other matters ordinarily covered by accountants’ “comfort letters” to underwriters in connection with registered public offerings (the first such letter, the “**Initial Comfort Letter**”) and (iii) updating the Initial Comfort Letter with any information that would have been included in the Initial Comfort Letter had it been given on such date and modified as necessary to relate to the Registration Statement and the Prospectus, as amended and supplemented to the date of such letter.

- (o) Market Activities; Compliance with Regulation M. The Company will not, directly or indirectly, (i) take any action designed to cause or result in, or that constitutes or would reasonably be expected to constitute, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of Common Stock or (ii) sell, bid for, or purchase Common Stock in violation of Regulation M, or pay anyone any compensation for soliciting purchases of the Placement Shares other than the Agent.
- (p) Investment Company Act. The Company will conduct its affairs in such a manner so as to reasonably ensure that neither it nor any of its Subsidiaries will be or become, at any time prior to the termination of this Agreement, required to register as an “investment company,” as such term is defined in the Investment Company Act.
- (q) No Offer to Sell. Other than an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus approved in advance by the Company and the Agent in their capacity as agent hereunder, neither the Agent nor the Company (including its agents and representatives, other than the Agent in its capacity as such) will make, use, prepare, authorize, approve or refer to any written communication (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), required to be filed with the Commission, that constitutes an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy Placement Shares hereunder.
- (r) Blue Sky and Other Qualifications. The Company will use its commercially reasonable efforts, in cooperation with the Agent, to qualify the Placement Shares for offering and sale, or to obtain an exemption for the Placement Shares to be offered and sold, under the applicable securities laws of such states and other jurisdictions (domestic or foreign) as the Agent may designate and to maintain such qualifications and exemptions in effect for so long as required for the distribution of the Placement Shares (but in no event for less than one year from the date of this Agreement); *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be obligated to file any general consent to service of process or to qualify as a foreign corporation or as a dealer in securities in any jurisdiction in which it is not so qualified or to subject itself to taxation in respect of doing business in any jurisdiction in which it is not otherwise so subject. In each jurisdiction in which the Placement Shares have been so qualified or exempt, the Company

will file such statements and reports as may be required by the laws of such jurisdiction to continue such qualification or exemption, as the case may be, in effect for so long as required for the distribution of the Placement Shares (but in no event for less than one year from the date of this Agreement).

- (s) Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The Company and the Subsidiaries will maintain and keep accurate books and records reflecting their assets and maintain internal accounting controls in a manner designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with GAAP and including those policies and procedures that (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that in reasonable detail accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company, (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit the preparation of the Company's consolidated financial statements in accordance with GAAP, (iii) that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with management's and the Company's directors' authorization, and (iv) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on its financial statements. The Company and the Subsidiaries will maintain such controls and other procedures, including, without limitation, those required by Sections 302 and 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, and the applicable regulations thereunder that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the Commission's rules and forms, including, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including its principal executive officer and principal financial officer, or persons performing similar functions, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure and to ensure that material information relating to the Company or the Subsidiaries is made known to them by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which such periodic reports are being prepared.
- (t) Secretary's Certificate; Further Documentation. Prior to the date of the first Placement Notice, the Company shall deliver to the Agent a certificate of the Secretary of the Company and attested to by an executive officer of the Company, dated as of such date, certifying as to (i) the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, (ii) the Amended and Restated By-laws of the Company, (iii) the resolutions of the Board of Directors of the Company authorizing the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the issuance of the Placement Shares and (iv) the incumbency of the officers duly authorized to execute this Agreement and the other documents contemplated by this Agreement. Within five (5) Trading Days of each Representation Date, the Company shall have furnished to the Agent such further information, certificates and documents as the Agent may reasonably request.
- (u) Emerging Growth Company Status. The Company will promptly notify the Agent if the Company ceases to be an Emerging Growth Company at any time during the term of this Agreement.

8. Payment of Expenses. The Company will pay all expenses incident to the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, including (i) the preparation and filing of the Registration Statement, including any fees required by the Commission, and the printing or electronic delivery of the Prospectus as originally filed and of each amendment and supplement thereto, in such number as the Agent shall deem necessary, (ii) the printing and delivery to the Agent of this Agreement and such other documents as may be required in connection with the offering, purchase, sale, issuance or delivery of the Placement Shares, (iii) the preparation, issuance and delivery of the certificates, if any, for the Placement Shares to the Agent, including any stock or other transfer taxes and any capital duties, stamp duties or other duties or taxes payable upon the sale, issuance or delivery of the Placement Shares to the Agent, (iv) the fees and disbursements of the counsel, accountants and other advisors to the Company, (v) the fees and expenses of the Agent including but not limited to the fees and expenses of the counsel to the Agent, payable upon the execution of this Agreement, (a) in an amount not to exceed \$75,000 in connection with the execution of this Agreement, (b) in an amount not to exceed \$25,000 per calendar quarter thereafter payable in connection with each Representation Date with respect to which the Company is obligated to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(l) for which no waiver is applicable and excluding the date of this Agreement, and (c) in an amount not to exceed \$25,000 for each program “refresh” (filing of a new registration statement, prospectus or prospectus supplement relating to the Placement Shares and/or an amendment of this Agreement) executed pursuant to this Agreement, (vi) the qualification or exemption of the Placement Shares under state securities laws in accordance with the provisions of Section 7(r) hereof, including filing fees, but excluding fees of the Agent’s counsel, (vii) the printing and delivery to the Agent of copies of any Permitted Issuer Free Writing Prospectus and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto in such number as the Agent shall deem necessary, (viii) the preparation, printing and delivery to the Agent of copies of the blue sky survey, (ix) the fees and expenses of the transfer agent and registrar for the Common Stock, (x) the filing and other fees incident to any review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the Placement Shares including the fees of the Agent’s counsel (subject to the cap, set forth in clause (v) above), and (xi) the fees and expenses incurred in connection with the listing of the Placement Shares on the Exchange. The Company agrees to pay the fees and expenses of counsel to the Agent set forth in clause (v) above by wire transfer of immediately available funds directly to such counsel upon presentation of an invoice containing the requisite payment information prepared by such counsel.
9. Conditions to Agent’s Obligations. The obligations of the Agent hereunder with respect to a Placement will be subject to the continuing accuracy and completeness of the representations and warranties made by the Company herein, to the due performance by the Company of its obligations hereunder, to the completion by the Agent of a due diligence review satisfactory to it in its reasonable judgment, and to the continuing satisfaction (or waiver by the Agent in its sole discretion) of the following additional conditions:
- (a) Registration Statement Effective. The Registration Statement shall have become effective and shall be available for the (i) resale of all Placement Shares issued to the Agent and not yet sold by the Agent and (ii) sale of all Placement Shares contemplated to be issued by any Placement Notice.

- (b) No Material Notices. None of the following events shall have occurred and be continuing: (i) receipt by the Company of any request for additional information from the Commission or any other federal or state Governmental Authority during the period of effectiveness of the Registration Statement, the response to which would require any post-effective amendments or supplements to the Registration Statement or the Prospectus; (ii) the issuance by the Commission or any other federal or state Governmental Authority of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or the initiation of any proceedings for that purpose; (iii) receipt by the Company of any notification with respect to the suspension of the qualification or exemption from qualification of any of the Placement Shares for sale in any jurisdiction or the initiation or threatening of any proceeding for such purpose; or (iv) the occurrence of any event that makes any statement of a material fact made in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated therein by reference untrue or that requires the making of any changes in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or documents so that, in the case of the Registration Statement, it will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and, that in the case of the Prospectus, it will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.
- (c) No Misstatement or Material Omission. The Agent shall not have advised the Company that the Registration Statement or Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, contains an untrue statement of fact that in the Agent's reasonable opinion is material, or omits to state a fact that in the Agent's reasonable opinion is material and is required to be stated therein or is necessary to make the statements therein not misleading.
- (d) Material Changes. Except as contemplated in the Prospectus, or disclosed in the Company's reports filed with the Commission, there shall not have been any material adverse change in the authorized capital stock of the Company or any Material Adverse Effect or any development that would cause a Material Adverse Effect, or a downgrading in or withdrawal of the rating assigned to any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities) by any rating organization or a public announcement by any rating organization that it has under surveillance or review its rating of any of the Company's securities (other than asset backed securities), the effect of which, in the case of any such action by a rating organization described above, in the reasonable judgment of the Agent (without relieving the Company of any obligation or liability it may otherwise have), is so material as to make it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering of the Placement Shares on the terms and in the manner contemplated in the Prospectus.
- (e) Legal Opinions. The Agent shall have received the opinions and negative assurance letters required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(m) on or before the date on which such delivery of such opinions and negative assurance letters, as applicable, is required pursuant to Section 7(m).
- (f) Comfort Letter. The Agent shall have received the Comfort Letter required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(n) on or before the date on which such delivery of such Comfort Letter is required pursuant to Section 7(n).

- (g) Representation Certificate. The Agent shall have received the certificate required to be delivered pursuant to Section 7(1) on or before the date on which delivery of such certificate is required pursuant to Section 7(1).
- (h) No Suspension. Trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended on the Exchange and the Common Stock shall not have been delisted from the Exchange.
- (i) Other Materials. On each date on which the Company is required to deliver a certificate pursuant to Section 7(1), the Company shall have furnished to the Agent such appropriate further information, opinions, certificates, letters and other documents as the Agent may reasonably request. All such opinions, certificates, letters and other documents will be in compliance with the provisions hereof.
- (j) Securities Act Filings Made. All filings with the Commission required by Rule 424 under the Securities Act to have been filed prior to the issuance of any Placement Notice hereunder shall have been made within the applicable time period prescribed for such filing by Rule 424.
- (k) Approval for Listing. The Placement Shares shall either have been (i) approved for listing on the Exchange, subject only to notice of issuance, or (ii) the Company shall have filed an application for listing of the Placement Shares on the Exchange at, or prior to, the issuance of any Placement Notice and the Exchange shall have reviewed such application and not provided any objections thereto.
- (l) FINRA. If applicable, FINRA shall have raised no objection to the terms of this offering and the amount of compensation allowable or payable to the Agent as described in the Prospectus.
- (m) No Termination Event. There shall not have occurred any event that would permit the Agent to terminate this Agreement pursuant to Section 12(a).

#### 10. Indemnification and Contribution.

- (a) Company Indemnification. The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Agent, its affiliates and their respective partners, members, directors, officers, employees and agents and each person, if any, who controls the Agent or any affiliate within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act as follows:
  - (i) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, joint or several, arising out of or based upon any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in the Registration Statement (or any amendment thereto), or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, or arising out of any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact included in any related Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto), or the omission or alleged omission therefrom of a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading;

- (ii) against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense whatsoever, as incurred, joint or several, to the extent of the aggregate amount paid in settlement of any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any Governmental Authority, commenced or threatened, or of any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission; *provided* that (subject to Section 10(d) below) any such settlement is effected with the written consent of the Company, which consent shall not unreasonably be delayed or withheld; and
- (iii) against any and all expense whatsoever, as incurred (including the fees and disbursements of counsel), reasonably incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any Governmental Authority, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue statement or omission, or any such alleged untrue statement or omission (whether or not a party), to the extent that any such expense is not paid under (i) or (ii) above,

*provided, however*, that this indemnity agreement shall not apply to any loss, liability, claim, damage or expense to the extent arising out of any untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission made solely in reliance upon and in conformity with the Agent's Information (as defined below).

- (b) Agent's Indemnification. The Agent agrees to indemnify and hold harmless the Company and its directors and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement, and each person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act against any and all loss, liability, claim, damage and expense described in the indemnity contained in Section 10(a), as incurred, but only with respect to untrue statements or omissions, or alleged untrue statements or omissions, made in the Registration Statement (or any amendments thereto), the Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) in reliance upon and in conformity with information relating to the Agent and furnished to the Company in writing by the Agent expressly for use therein. The Company hereby acknowledges that the only information that the Agent has furnished to the Company expressly for use in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any Prospectus Supplement or any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (or any amendment or supplement thereto) are the statements set forth in the eighth paragraph under the caption "Plan of Distribution" in the Prospectus (the "Agent's Information").
- (c) Procedure. Any party that proposes to assert the right to be indemnified under this Section 10 will, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim is to be made against an indemnifying party or parties under this Section 10, notify each such indemnifying party of the commencement of such action, enclosing a copy of all papers served, but the omission so to notify such indemnifying party will not relieve the indemnifying party from (i) any liability that it might have to any indemnified party otherwise than under this Section 10 and (ii) any liability that it may have to any indemnified party under the foregoing provision of this Section 10 unless, and only to the extent that, such omission results in the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses by the indemnifying party. If any such action is brought against any indemnified party and it notifies

the indemnifying party of its commencement, the indemnifying party will be entitled to participate in and, to the extent that it elects by delivering written notice to the indemnified party promptly after receiving notice of the commencement of the action from the indemnified party, jointly with any other indemnifying party similarly notified, to assume the defense of the action, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party, and after notice from the indemnifying party to the indemnified party of its election to assume the defense, the indemnifying party will not be liable to the indemnified party for any other legal expenses except as provided below and except for the reasonable costs of investigation subsequently incurred by the indemnified party in connection with the defense. The indemnified party will have the right to employ its own counsel in any such action, but the fees, expenses and other charges of such counsel will be at the expense of such indemnified party unless (1) the employment of counsel by the indemnified party has been authorized in writing by the indemnifying party, (2) the indemnified party has reasonably concluded (based on advice of counsel) that there may be legal defenses available to it or other indemnified parties that are different from or in addition to those available to the indemnifying party, (3) a conflict or potential conflict exists (based on advice of counsel to the indemnified party) between the indemnified party and the indemnifying party (in which case the indemnifying party will not have the right to direct the defense of such action on behalf of the indemnified party) or (4) the indemnifying party has not in fact employed counsel to assume the defense of such action or counsel reasonably satisfactory to the indemnified party, in each case, within a reasonable time after receiving notice of the commencement of the action; in each of which cases the reasonable fees, disbursements and other charges of counsel will be at the expense of the indemnifying party or parties. It is understood that the indemnifying party or parties shall not, in connection with any proceeding or related proceedings in the same jurisdiction, be liable for the reasonable fees, disbursements and other charges of more than one separate firm (plus local counsel) admitted to practice in such jurisdiction at any one time for all such indemnified party or parties. All such fees, disbursements and other charges will be reimbursed by the indemnifying party promptly as they are incurred. An indemnifying party will not, in any event, be liable for any settlement of any action or claim effected without its written consent. No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of each indemnified party, settle or compromise or consent to the entry of any judgment in any pending or threatened claim, action or proceeding relating to the matters contemplated by this Section 10 (whether or not any indemnified party is a party thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or consent (1) includes an express and unconditional release of each indemnified party, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party, from all liability arising out of such litigation, investigation, proceeding or claim and (2) does not include a statement as to or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act by or on behalf of any indemnified party.

- (d) Settlement Without Consent if Failure to Reimburse. If an indemnified party shall have requested an indemnifying party to reimburse the indemnified party for reasonable fees and expenses of counsel, such indemnifying party agrees that it shall be liable for any settlement of the nature contemplated by Section 10(a)(ii) effected without its written consent if (1) such settlement is entered into more than 45 days after receipt by such indemnifying party of the aforesaid request, (2) such indemnifying party shall have received notice of the terms of such settlement at least 30 days prior to such settlement being entered into and (3) such indemnifying party shall not have reimbursed such indemnified party in accordance with such request prior to the date of such settlement.

(e) Contribution. In order to provide for just and equitable contribution in circumstances in which the indemnification provided for in the foregoing paragraphs of this Section 10 is applicable in accordance with its terms but for any reason is held to be unavailable or insufficient from the Company or the Agent, the Company and the Agent will contribute to the total losses, claims, liabilities, expenses and damages (including any investigative, legal and other expenses reasonably incurred in connection with, and any amount paid in settlement of, any action, suit or proceeding or any claim asserted) to which the Company and the Agent may be subject in such proportion as shall be appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other hand. The relative benefits received by the Company on the one hand and the Agent on the other hand shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total net proceeds from the sale of the Placement Shares (before deducting expenses) received by the Company bear to the total compensation received by the Agent from the sale of Placement Shares on behalf of the Company. If, but only if, the allocation provided by the foregoing sentence is not permitted by applicable law, the allocation of contribution shall be made in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to in the foregoing sentence but also the relative fault of the Company, on the one hand, and the Agent, on the other hand, with respect to the statements or omission that resulted in such loss, claim, liability, expense or damage, or action in respect thereof, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations with respect to such offering. Such relative fault shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company or the Agent, the intent of the parties and their relative knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission. The Company and the Agent agree that it would not be just and equitable if contributions pursuant to this Section 10(e) were to be determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation that does not take into account the equitable considerations referred to herein. The amount paid or payable by an indemnified party as a result of the loss, claim, liability, expense, or damage, or action in respect thereof, referred to above in this Section 10(e) shall be deemed to include, for the purpose of this Section 10(e), any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in connection with investigating or defending any such action or claim to the extent consistent with Section 10(c) hereof. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 10(e), the Agent shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the commissions received by it under this Agreement and no person found guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) will be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. For purposes of this Section 10(e), any person who controls a party to this Agreement within the meaning of the Securities Act, any affiliates of the Agent and any officers, directors, partners, employees or agents of the Agent or any of its affiliates, will have the same rights to contribution as that party, and each director of the Company and each officer of the Company who signed the Registration Statement will have the same rights to contribution as the Company, subject in each case to the provisions hereof. Any party entitled to contribution, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action against such party in respect of which a claim for contribution may be made under this Section 10(e), will notify any such party or parties from whom contribution may be sought, but the omission to so notify will not relieve that party or parties from whom contribution may be sought from any other obligation it or they may have under this Section 10(e) except to the

extent that the failure to so notify such other party materially prejudiced the substantive rights or defenses of the party from whom contribution is sought. Except for a settlement entered into pursuant to the last sentence of Section 10(c) hereof, no party will be liable for contribution with respect to any action or claim settled without its written consent if such consent is required pursuant to Section 10(c) hereof.

11. Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery. The indemnity and contribution agreements contained in Section 10 of this Agreement and all representations and warranties of the Company herein or in certificates delivered pursuant hereto shall survive, as of their respective dates, regardless of (i) any investigation made by or on behalf of the Agent, any controlling persons, or the Company (or any of their respective officers, directors, employees or controlling persons), (ii) delivery and acceptance of the Placement Shares and payment therefor or (iii) any termination of this Agreement.

12. Termination.

(a) The Agent may terminate this Agreement, by notice to the Company, as hereinafter specified at any time (1) if there has been, since the time of execution of this Agreement or since the date as of which information is given in the Prospectus, any change, or any development or event involving a prospective change, in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the business, properties, earnings, results of operations or prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries considered as one enterprise, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, which individually or in the aggregate, in the sole judgment of the Agent is material and adverse and makes it impractical or inadvisable to market the Placement Shares or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Placement Shares, (2) if there has occurred any material adverse change in the financial markets in the United States or the international financial markets, any outbreak of hostilities or escalation thereof or other calamity or crisis or any change or development involving a prospective change in national or international political, financial or economic conditions, in each case the effect of which is such as to make it, in the judgment of the Agent, impracticable or inadvisable to market the Placement Shares or to enforce contracts for the sale of the Placement Shares, (3) if trading in the Common Stock has been suspended or limited by the Commission or the Exchange, or if trading generally on the Exchange has been suspended or limited, or minimum prices for trading have been fixed on the Exchange, (4) if any suspension of trading of any securities of the Company on any exchange or in the over-the-counter market shall have occurred and be continuing, (5) if a major disruption of securities settlements or clearance services in the United States shall have occurred and be continuing, or (6) if a banking moratorium has been declared by either U.S. Federal or New York authorities. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 8 (Payment of Expenses), Section 10 (Indemnification and Contribution), Section 11 (Representations and Agreements to Survive Delivery), Section 17 (Governing Law and Time; Waiver of Jury Trial) and Section 18 (Consent to Jurisdiction) hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination. If the Agent elects to terminate this Agreement as provided in this Section 12(a), the Agent shall provide the required notice as specified in Section 13 (Notices).

(b) The Company shall have the right, by giving ten (10) days' notice as hereinafter specified to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement.

Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 8, Section 10, Section 11, Section 17 and Section 18 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.

- (c) The Agent shall have the right, by giving ten (10) days' notice as hereinafter specified to terminate this Agreement in its sole discretion at any time after the date of this Agreement. Any such termination shall be without liability of any party to any other party except that the provisions of Section 8, Section 10, Section 11, Section 17 and Section 18 hereof shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding such termination.
- (d) This Agreement shall remain in full force and effect unless terminated pursuant to Sections 12(a), (b), or (c) above or otherwise by mutual agreement of the parties; *provided, however*, that any such termination by mutual agreement shall in all cases be deemed to provide that Section 8, Section 10, Section 11, Section 17 and Section 18 shall remain in full force and effect.
- (e) Any termination of this Agreement shall be effective on the date specified in such notice of termination; *provided, however*, that such termination shall not be effective until the close of business on the date of receipt of such notice by the Agent or the Company, as the case may be. If such termination shall occur prior to the Settlement Date for any sale of Placement Shares, such Placement Shares shall settle in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement.

13. Notices. All notices or other communications required or permitted to be given by any party to any other party pursuant to the terms of this Agreement shall be in writing, unless otherwise specified, and if sent to the Agent, shall be delivered to:

UBS Securities LLC  
11 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10010  
Attention: Special Equities Group  
Email: ol-seg@ubs.com

with a copy to:

Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C.  
One Financial Center  
Boston, MA 02111  
Attention: William C. Hicks; John T. Rudy; Alok A. Choksi  
Email: WCHicks@mintz.com; JRudy@mintz.com; AChoksi@mintz.com

and if to the Company, shall be delivered to:

SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.  
777 W. 41st Street, Suite 401  
Miami Beach, FL 33140  
Attention: Lucy To  
Email: [\*\*\*\*\*]

with a copy to:

Dentons US LLP  
1221 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10020  
Attention: Ilan Katz and Brian Lee  
Email: Ilan.Katz@Dentons.com; Brian.Lee@Dentons.com

Each party to this Agreement may change such address for notices by sending to the parties to this Agreement written notice of a new address for such purpose. Each such notice or other communication shall be deemed given (i) when delivered personally or by verifiable facsimile transmission (with an original to follow) on or before 4:30 p.m., New York City time, on a Business Day or, if such day is not a Business Day, on the next succeeding Business Day, (ii) by Electronic Notice, as set forth below, (iii) on the next Business Day after timely delivery to a nationally-recognized overnight courier and (iv) on the Business Day actually received if deposited in the U.S. mail (certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid). For purposes of this Agreement, “**Business Day**” shall mean any day on which the Exchange and commercial banks in the City of New York are open for business.

An electronic communication (“**Electronic Notice**”) shall be deemed written notice for purposes of this Section 13 if sent to the electronic mail address specified by the receiving party under separate cover. Electronic Notice shall be deemed received at the time the party sending Electronic Notice receives verification of receipt by the receiving party. Any party receiving Electronic Notice may request and shall be entitled to receive the notice on paper, in a nonelectronic form (“**Nonelectronic Notice**”) which shall be sent to the requesting party within ten (10) days of receipt of the written request for Nonelectronic Notice.

14. Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the Company and the Agent and their respective successors and the parties referred to in Section 10 hereof. References to any of the parties contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to include the successors and permitted assigns of such party. Nothing in this Agreement, express or implied, is intended to confer upon any party other than the parties hereto or their respective successors and permitted assigns any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of this Agreement, except as expressly provided in this Agreement. Neither party may assign its rights or obligations under this Agreement without the prior written consent of the other party; *provided, however*, that the Agent may assign its rights and obligations hereunder to an affiliate thereof without obtaining the Company’s consent.
15. Adjustments for Stock Splits. The parties acknowledge and agree that all share-related numbers contained in this Agreement shall be adjusted to take into account any stock split, stock dividend or similar event effected with respect to the Placement Shares.
16. Entire Agreement; Amendment; Severability; Waiver. This Agreement (including all schedules and exhibits attached hereto and Placement Notices issued pursuant hereto) constitutes the entire agreement and supersedes all other prior and contemporaneous agreements and undertakings, both written and oral, among the parties hereto with regard to the subject matter hereof. Neither this Agreement nor any term hereof may be amended except

pursuant to a written instrument executed by the Company and the Agent. No waiver of any provision of this Agreement shall be effective unless in a written instrument executed by the party against whom such waiver is to be effective. In the event that any one or more of the provisions contained herein, or the application thereof in any circumstance, is held invalid, illegal or unenforceable as written by a court of competent jurisdiction, then such provision shall be given full force and effect to the fullest possible extent that it is valid, legal and enforceable, and the remainder of the terms and provisions herein shall be construed as if such invalid, illegal or unenforceable term or provision was not contained herein, but only to the extent that giving effect to such provision and the remainder of the terms and provisions hereof shall be in accordance with the intent of the parties as reflected in this Agreement. No implied waiver by a party shall arise in the absence of a waiver in writing signed by such party. No failure or delay in exercising any right, power, or privilege hereunder shall operate as a waiver thereof, nor shall any single or partial exercise thereof preclude any other or further exercise thereof or the exercise of any right, power, or privilege hereunder.

17. **GOVERNING LAW AND TIME; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.** THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK WITHOUT REGARD TO THE PRINCIPLES OF CONFLICTS OF LAWS. SPECIFIED TIMES OF DAY REFER TO NEW YORK CITY TIME. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.
18. **CONSENT TO JURISDICTION.** EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY SUBMITS TO THE EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THE STATE AND FEDERAL COURTS SITTING IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK, BOROUGH OF MANHATTAN, FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY, AND HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, AND AGREES NOT TO ASSERT IN ANY SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING, ANY CLAIM THAT IT IS NOT PERSONALLY SUBJECT TO THE JURISDICTION OF ANY SUCH COURT, THAT SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS BROUGHT IN AN INCONVENIENT FORUM OR THAT THE VENUE OF SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING IS IMPROPER. EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES PERSONAL SERVICE OF PROCESS AND CONSENTS TO PROCESS BEING SERVED IN ANY SUCH SUIT, ACTION OR PROCEEDING BY MAILING A COPY THEREOF (CERTIFIED OR REGISTERED MAIL, RETURN RECEIPT REQUESTED) TO SUCH PARTY AT THE ADDRESS IN EFFECT FOR NOTICES TO IT UNDER THIS AGREEMENT AND AGREES THAT SUCH SERVICE SHALL CONSTITUTE GOOD AND SUFFICIENT SERVICE OF PROCESS AND NOTICE THEREOF. NOTHING CONTAINED HEREIN SHALL BE DEEMED TO LIMIT IN ANY WAY ANY RIGHT TO SERVE PROCESS IN ANY MANNER PERMITTED BY LAW.
19. **Counterparts.** This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one and the same

instrument. Delivery of an executed Agreement by one party to the other may be made by facsimile, electronic mail (including any electronic signature covered by the U.S. federal ESIGN Act of 2000, Uniform Electronic Transactions Act, the Electronic Signatures and Records Act or other applicable law, e.g., www.docuSign.com) or other transmission method and any counterpart so delivered shall be deemed to have been duly and validly delivered and be valid and effective for all purposes.

20. Construction. The section and exhibit headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof. References herein to any law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any Governmental Authority shall be deemed to refer to such law, statute, ordinance, code, regulation, rule or other requirement of any Governmental Authority as amended, reenacted, supplemented or superseded in whole or in part and in effect from time to time and also to all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.
21. Permitted Free Writing Prospectuses. The Company represents, warrants and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Agent, and the Agent represents, warrants and agrees that, unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Company, it has not made and will not make any offer relating to the Placement Shares that would constitute an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 405, required to be filed with the Commission. Any such free writing prospectus consented to by the Agent or by the Company, as the case may be, is hereinafter referred to as a “Permitted Free Writing Prospectus.” The Company represents and warrants that it has treated and agrees that it will treat each Permitted Free Writing Prospectus as an “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433, and has complied and will comply with the requirements of Rule 433 applicable to any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, including timely filing with the Commission where required, legending and record keeping. For the purposes of clarity, the parties hereto agree that all free writing prospectuses, if any, listed in Exhibit 21 hereto are Permitted Free Writing Prospectuses.
22. Absence of Fiduciary Relationship. The Company acknowledges and agrees that:
- (a) The Agent is acting solely as agent in connection with the public offering of the Placement Shares and in connection with each transaction contemplated by this Agreement and the process leading to such transactions, and no fiduciary or advisory relationship between the Company or any of its respective affiliates, stockholders (or other equity holders), creditors or employees or any other party, on the one hand, and the Agent, on the other hand, has been or will be created in respect of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, irrespective of whether or not the Agent has advised or is advising the Company on other matters, and the Agent has no obligation to the Company with respect to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement;
- (b) It is capable of evaluating and understanding, and understands and accepts, the terms, risks and conditions of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;

- (c) Neither the Agent nor its affiliates have provided any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice with respect to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and it has consulted its own legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent it has deemed appropriate;
- (d) It is aware that the Agent and its affiliates are engaged in a broad range of transactions which may involve interests that differ from those of the Company and the Agent and its affiliates have no obligation to disclose such interests and transactions to the Company by virtue of any fiduciary, advisory or agency relationship or otherwise; and
- (e) It waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any claims it may have against the Agent or its affiliates for breach of fiduciary duty or alleged breach of fiduciary duty in connection with the sale of Placement Shares under this Agreement and agrees that the Agent and its affiliates shall not have any liability (whether direct or indirect, in contract, tort or otherwise) to the Company in respect of such a fiduciary duty claim or to any person asserting a fiduciary duty claim on its behalf or in right of the Company, including stockholders, employees or creditors of the Company.

23. **Definitions.** As used in this Agreement, the following terms have the respective meanings set forth below:

“**Applicable Time**” means (i) each Representation Date, (ii) the time of each sale of any Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement and (iii) each Settlement Date.

“**Governmental Authority**” means (i) any federal, provincial, state, local, municipal, national or international government or governmental authority, regulatory or administrative agency, governmental commission, department, board, bureau, agency or instrumentality, court, tribunal, arbitrator or arbitral body (public or private); (ii) any self-regulatory organization; or (iii) any political subdivision of any of the foregoing.

“**Issuer Free Writing Prospectus**” means any “issuer free writing prospectus,” as defined in Rule 433, relating to the Placement Shares that (1) is required to be filed with the Commission by the Company, (2) is a “road show” that is a “written communication” within the meaning of Rule 433(d)(8)(i) whether or not required to be filed with the Commission, or (3) is exempt from filing pursuant to Rule 433(d)(5)(i) because it contains a description of the Placement Shares or of the offering that does not reflect the final terms, in each case in the form filed or required to be filed with the Commission or, if not required to be filed, in the form retained in the Company’s records pursuant to Rule 433(g) under the Securities Act Regulations.

“**Rule 164**,” “**Rule 172**,” “**Rule 405**,” “**Rule 415**,” “**Rule 424**,” “**Rule 424(b)**,” “**Rule 430B**,” and “**Rule 433**” refer to such rules under the Securities Act Regulations.

All references in this Agreement to financial statements and schedules and other information that is “contained,” “included” or “stated” in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus (and all other references of like import) shall be deemed to mean and include all such financial statements and schedules and other information that is incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus, as the case may be.

All references in this Agreement to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement to any of the foregoing shall be deemed to include the copy filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR; all references in this Agreement to any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus (other than any Issuer Free Writing Prospectuses that, pursuant to Rule 433, are not required to be filed with the Commission) shall be deemed to include the copy thereof filed with the Commission pursuant to EDGAR; and all references in this Agreement to “supplements” to the Prospectus shall include, without limitation, any supplements, “wrappers” or similar materials prepared in connection with any offering, sale or private placement of any Placement Shares by the Agent outside of the United States.

*[Signature Page Follows]*

If the foregoing correctly sets forth the understanding between the Company and the Agent, please so indicate in the space provided below for that purpose, whereupon this letter shall constitute a binding agreement between the Company and the Agent.

Very truly yours,

SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.

By: /s/ Lucy To

Name: Lucy To

Title: Chief Financial Officer

ACCEPTED as of the date first-above written:

UBS SECURITIES LLC

By: /s/ Jesse O'Neill

Name: Jesse O'Neill

Title: Executive Director

By: /s/ Charles Heaney

Name: Charles Heaney

Title: Director

[Signature Page to Sales Agreement]

---

**SCHEDULE 1**

---

**Form of Placement Notice**

---

From: SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.

To: UBS Securities LLC

Attention: Jesse O'Neill  
Charles Heaney

Subject: Placement Notice

Date: [•], 202[•]

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Pursuant to the terms and subject to the conditions contained in the Sales Agreement between SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and UBS Securities LLC (the “**Agent**”), dated December 29, 2025, the Company hereby requests that the Agent sell up to [•] of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, at a minimum market price of \$[•] per share, during the time period beginning [month, day, time] and ending [month, day, time].

---

## **SCHEDULE 2**

---

### **Compensation**

---

The Company shall pay to the Agent in cash, upon each sale of Placement Shares pursuant to this Agreement, an amount up to 3.0% of the aggregate gross proceeds from each sale of Placement Shares.

---

**SCHEDULE 3**

---

**Notice Parties**

---

The Company

Lucy To ([\*\*\*\*\*])

With copies to:

Ilan Katz and Brian Lee (Ilan.Katz@Dentons.com; Brian.Lee@Dentons.com)

UBS Securities LLC

Jesse O'Neill ([\*\*\*\*\*])

Charles Heaney ([\*\*\*\*\*])

With copies to:

William C. Hicks; John T. Rudy; Alok A. Choksi

Email: WCHicks@mintz.com; JRudy@mintz.com; AChoksi@mintz.com

---

**SCHEDULE 4**

---

**Subsidiaries**

---

Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 21 of the Company's most recently filed Form 10-K, as applicable.

---

### Form of Representation Date Certificate Pursuant to Section 7(l)

The undersigned, the duly qualified and elected [•], of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), does hereby certify in such capacity and on behalf of the Company, pursuant to Section 7(l) of the Sales Agreement, dated December 29, 2025 (the “Sales Agreement”), between the Company and UBS Securities LLC, that to the best of the knowledge of the undersigned:

(i) The representations and warranties of the Company in Section 6 of the Sales Agreement are true and correct on and as of the date hereof with the same force and effect as if expressly made on and as of the date hereof, except for those representations and warranties that speak solely as of a specific date and which were true and correct as of such date; *provided, however*, that such representations and warranties also shall be qualified by the disclosure included or incorporated by reference in the Registration Statement and Prospectus;

(ii) The Company has complied with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied pursuant to the Sales Agreement at or prior to the date hereof;

(iii) There has been no Material Adverse Effect since the date of which information is given in the Prospectus, as amended or supplemented;

(iv) The Company does not currently possess any material non-public information; and

(v) The aggregate offering price of the Placement Shares that may be issued and sold pursuant to the Sales Agreement and the maximum number or amount of Placement Shares that may be sold pursuant to the Sales Agreement have been duly authorized by the Company’s board of directors or a duly authorized committee thereof.

Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Sales Agreement.

SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.

By:

Name:

Title:

Date: [•]

---

**Exhibit 21**

**Permitted Free Writing Prospectus**

None.

---

## SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.

Issuer

AND

as Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of, [ ]

Debt Securities

## CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE(1)

SECTION OF TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939, AS AMENDED	SECTION(S) OF INDENTURE
310(a)	7.9
310(b)	7.8
311(a)	7.13
311(b)	7.13
312(a)	5.1, 5.2(a)
312(b)	5.2(b)
312(c)	5.2(c)
313(a)	5.4
313(b)	5.4
313(c)	5.4
313(d)	5.4
314(a)	5.3, 14.12
314(c)	14.7(a)
314(e)	14.7(b)
315(a)	7.1
315(b)	7.14
315(c)	7.1
315(d)	7.1
315(e)	6.7
316(a)	6.6, 8.4
316(b)	6.4
316(c)	8.1
317(a)	6.2
317(b)	4.2
318(a)	14.9

## Table of Contents

ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS	1	
Section 1.1	Definitions of Terms.	1
Section 1.2	Incorporation by Reference of Trust Indenture Act.	6
ARTICLE II ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	6	
Section 2.1	Designation and Terms of Securities.	6
Section 2.2	Form of Securities and Trustee's Certificate.	9
Section 2.3	Denominations; Provisions for Payment.	9
Section 2.4	Execution and Authentication.	10
Section 2.5	Registration of Transfer and Exchange.	11
Section 2.6	Temporary Securities.	12
Section 2.7	Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Securities.	13
Section 2.8	Cancellation.	14
Section 2.9	Benefits of Indenture.	14
Section 2.10	Authenticating Agent.	14
Section 2.11	Global Securities.	15
Section 2.12	Cusip and Isin Numbers.	16
ARTICLE III REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	16	
Section 3.1	Redemption.	16
Section 3.2	Notice of Redemption.	16
Section 3.3	Payment upon Redemption.	17
Section 3.4	Sinking Fund.	18
Section 3.5	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.	18
Section 3.6	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.	18
ARTICLE IV COVENANTS	19	
Section 4.1	Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.	19
Section 4.2	Paying Agent and Security Registrar.	19
Section 4.3	Appointment to Fill Vacancy in Office of Trustee.	21
Section 4.4	Compliance with Consolidation Provisions.	21
ARTICLE V SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	21	
Section 5.1	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders.	21
Section 5.2	Preservation of Information; Communications with Securityholders.	21
Section 5.3	Reports by the Company.	22
Section 5.4	Reports by the Trustee.	22
ARTICLE VI REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	23	
Section 6.1	Events of Default.	23
Section 6.2	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.	25
Section 6.3	Application of Moneys Collected.	26
Section 6.4	Limitation on Suits.	26
Section 6.5	Rights and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission not Waiver.	27
Section 6.6	Control by Securityholders.	28
Section 6.7	Undertaking to Pay Costs.	28
ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	29	
Section 7.1	Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustee.	29
Section 7.2	Certain Rights of Trustee.	30

---

Section 7.3	Trustee not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.	31
Section 7.4	May Hold Securities and Otherwise Deal with the Company.	32
Section 7.5	Moneys Held in Trust.	32
Section 7.6	Compensation and Reimbursement.	32
Section 7.7	Reliance on Officer's Certificate.	33
Section 7.8	Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.	33
Section 7.9	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.	33
Section 7.10	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.	34
Section 7.11	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.	35
Section 7.12	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.	36
Section 7.13	Preferential Collection of Claims Against the Company.	37
Section 7.14	Notice of Default.	37
Section 7.15	Limitation of Liability	37
<b>ARTICLE VIII CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS</b>		<b>37</b>
Section 8.1	Evidence of Action by Securityholders.	37
Section 8.2	Proof of Execution by Securityholders.	38
Section 8.3	Who may be Deemed Owners.	38
Section 8.4	Certain Securities Owned by Company Disregarded.	39
Section 8.5	Actions Binding on Future Securityholders.	39
<b>ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</b>		<b>39</b>
Section 9.1	Supplemental Indentures without the Consent of Securityholders.	39
Section 9.2	Supplemental Indentures with the Consent of Securityholders.	41
Section 9.3	Effect of Supplemental Indentures.	42
Section 9.4	Securities Affected by Supplemental Indentures.	42
Section 9.5	Execution of Supplemental Indentures.	42
<b>ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY</b>		<b>43</b>
Section 10.1	Company may Consolidate, etc.	43
Section 10.2	Successor Entity Substituted.	43
Section 10.3	Evidence of Consolidation, etc. To Trustee.	44
<b>ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE</b>		<b>44</b>
Section 11.1	Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.	44
Section 11.2	Application of Trust Money.	45
<b>ARTICLE XII LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE</b>		<b>46</b>
Section 12.1	Option to Effect Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.	46
Section 12.2	Legal Defeasance and Discharge.	46
Section 12.3	Covenant Defeasance.	47
Section 12.4	Conditions to Legal or Covenant Defeasance.	47
Section 12.5	Deposited Money and Government Securities to be Held in Trust; other Miscellaneous Provisions.	48
Section 12.6	Repayment to Company.	49
Section 12.7	Reinstatement.	49
<b>ARTICLE XIII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS</b>		<b>50</b>
Section 13.1	No Recourse.	50
<b>ARTICLE XIV MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS</b>		<b>50</b>

---

Section 14.1	Effect on Successors and Assigns.	50
Section 14.2	Actions by Successor.	50
Section 14.3	Surrender of Company Powers.	50
Section 14.4	Notices.	50
Section 14.5	Governing Law/Waiver of Jury Trial.	51
Section 14.6	Treatment of Securities as Debt.	51
Section 14.7	Compliance Certificates and Opinions.	51
Section 14.8	Payments on Business Days.	51
Section 14.9	Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.	52
Section 14.10	Counterparts.	52
Section 14.11	Severability.	52
Section 14.12	Compliance Certificates.	52
Section 14.13	USA Patriot Act	52
Section 14.14	Consent to Jurisdiction and Service	53
Section 14.15	Force Majeure	53

## INDENTURE

INDENTURE, dated as of , [ ], among SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and \_\_\_\_\_, a national banking association organized under the laws of the United States, as trustee (the “**Trustee**”):

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “**Securities**”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as in this Indenture provided, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the holders of Securities:

## ARTICLE I

### DEFINITIONS

#### SECTION 1.1 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS.

The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture or any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or that are by reference in such Act defined in the Securities Act (except as herein or any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“**Authenticating Agent**” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“**Affiliate**” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified person. For purposes of this definition, “control,” as used with respect to any Person, means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such Person, whether

through the ownership of voting securities, by agreement or otherwise. For purposes of this definition, the terms “controlling,” “controlled by” and “under common control with” have correlative meanings.

“**Authorized Officer**,” when used with respect to the Company, means the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Co-Chief Executive Officers, the President, the Chief Operating Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer, any Assistant Treasurer, the Controller, the Secretary or any Executive Vice President or Senior Vice President of the Company.

“**Bankruptcy Law**” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“**Board of Directors**” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“**Board Resolution**” means a copy of one or more resolutions certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors, or such committee of the Board of Directors or officers of the Company to which authority to act on behalf of the Board of Directors has been delegated, and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and to be delivered to the Trustee.

“**Business Day**” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than a day on which federal or state banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“**Code**” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

“**Commission**” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“**Company**” means SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware, and, subject to the provisions of Article X, shall also include its successors and assigns.

“**Company Request**” and “**Company Order**” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by one or more Authorized Officers of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“**Corporate Trust Office**” means the principal office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, this Indenture shall be administered, which office at the date hereof is located at ; Attention: . With respect to presentation for transfer or exchange, conversions or principal payment, such address shall be ; Attention: , or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by written notice to the Securityholders and the Company, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by written notice to the Securityholders and the Company).

“**Covenant Defeasance**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 12.3.

“**Custodian**” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“**Default**” means any event, act or condition that with notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“**Depository**” means, with respect to Securities of any series for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.1 or 2.11.

“**Event of Default**” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series, any event specified in Section 6.1, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“**Exchange Act**” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

---

“**Global Security**” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with this Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“**Governmental Obligations**” means securities that are (a) direct obligations of the U.S. for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (b) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the U.S., the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the U.S. that, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act) as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“**herein**,” “**hereof**” and “**hereunder**,” and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“**Indenture**” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more Board Resolutions or one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof.

“**Interest Payment Date**,” when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“**Legal Defeasance**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 12.2.

“**Officer’s Certificate**” means a certificate signed by an Authorized Officer of the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 14.7, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof. An Officer’s Certificate given pursuant to Section 14.12 shall be signed by the principal executive, financial or accounting officer of the Company but need not contain the statements provided for in Section 14.7.

“**Opinion of Counsel**” means an opinion in writing subject to customary exceptions of legal counsel, who may be an employee of or counsel for the Company, that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. Each such opinion shall include the statements provided for in Section 14.7, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“**Outstanding**,” when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.4, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee, or delivered to the Trustee or any Paying Agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which cash or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been irrevocably deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any Paying Agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article III provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.7, unless the Trustee and the Company receive proof satisfactory to them that the replaced Security is held by a protected purchaser.

“**Paying Agent**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 4.2(a).

“**Person**” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization, limited liability company or government or other entity, and includes any syndicate or group that would be deemed to be a “person” under Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act.

---

“**Predecessor Security**” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.7 in lieu of a lost, destroyed or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the lost, destroyed or stolen Security.

“**Redemption Date**,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“**Securities**” shall have the meaning set forth in the recitals to this Indenture.

“**Securities Act**” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“**Securityholder**,” “**holder of Securities**,” “**registered holder**,” or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered on the Security Register in accordance with the terms of this Indenture.

“**Security Register**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 4.2(a).

“**Security Registrar**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 4.2(a).

“**Stated Maturity**,” when used with respect to any security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security or a coupon representing such installment of interest as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

“**Subsidiary**” means, with respect to any Person, (i) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries, (ii) any general partnership, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries and (iii) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“**Trustee**” means , and, subject to the provisions of Article VII, shall also include its successors and assigns, and, if at any time there is more than one Person acting in such capacity hereunder, “Trustee” shall mean each such Person. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“**Trust Indenture Act**” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

“**Trust Officer**” means any officer of the Trustee with direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter hereunder, any other officer of the Trustee to whom such matter is referred because of his or her knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“**Uniform Commercial Code**” means the New York Uniform Commercial Code as in effect from time to time.

“**U.S.**” means the United States of America.

“**USA Patriot Act**” shall have the meaning set forth in Section 14.13.

“**Voting Stock**,” as applied to stock of any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

## **SECTION 1.2 INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE OF TRUST INDENTURE ACT.**

Whenever this Indenture refers to a provision of the Trust Indenture Act, the provision is incorporated by reference in and made a part of this Indenture.

---

All Trust Indenture Act terms used in this Indenture that are defined by the Trust Indenture Act, defined by Trust Indenture Act reference to another statute or defined by Commission rule have the meanings assigned to them by such definitions.

## ARTICLE II

### ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION

#### AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

##### SECTION 2.1 DESIGNATION AND TERMS OF SECURITIES.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of any series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:

(1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of that series from all other Securities);

(2) the principal amount of the Securities being offered and any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);

(3) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable, any original issue discount that may apply to the Securities of that series upon their issuance, the principal amount due at maturity, and the place(s) of payment;

(4) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any, and whether the rate(s) are fixed or variable;

(5) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date for the determination of holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates or the manner of determination of such record dates;

(6) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods and the duration of such extension;

(7) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;

(8) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund, mandatory redemption, or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(9) the terms of the subordination of any series of subordinated debt;

(10) the form of the Securities of the series including the form of the certificate of authentication for such series;

(11) if other than minimum denominations of two thousand U.S. dollars (\$2,000) or any integral multiple of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) in excess thereof, the minimum denominations and multiples in excess thereof in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(12) whether the Securities are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the terms and the identity of the Depository for such series;

(13) whether the Securities will be convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company or any other Person or other securities and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, including the conversion or exchange price, as applicable, or how it will be calculated and may be adjusted, any mandatory or optional (at the Company's option or the holders' option) conversion or exchange features, and the applicable conversion or exchange period;

---

(14) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.1;

(15) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants (which may but shall not be required to include, among other restrictions, restrictions on the Company's ability or the ability of the Company's Subsidiaries to: incur additional indebtedness; issue additional securities; create liens; pay dividends or make distributions in respect of their capital stock; redeem capital stock; in the case of such Subsidiaries, pay dividends, make distributions or transfer assets; make investments or other restricted payments; sell or otherwise dispose of assets; enter into sale leaseback transactions; engage in transactions with stockholders and affiliates; issue or sell stock of the Company's Subsidiaries; or effect a consolidation or merger) or financial covenants (which may include, among other financial covenants, financial covenants that require the Company and its Subsidiaries to maintain specified interest coverage, fixed charge, cash flow-based, asset-based or other financial ratios) provided for with respect to the Securities of the series;

(16) if other than U.S. dollars, the coin or currency in which the Securities of the series are denominated (including, but not limited to, foreign currency);

(17) the terms and conditions, if any, upon which the Company shall pay amounts in addition to the stated interest, premium, if any, and principal amounts of the Securities of the series to any Securityholder that is not a "United States person" for federal tax purposes, and the terms and conditions, if any, relating to the Company's ability to redeem such Securities if the Company is required to pay such additional amounts;

(18) a discussion of any material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the Securities of the series;

(19) any restrictions on transfer, sale or assignment of the Securities of the series;

(20) the terms, if any, relating to any auction or remarketing of the Securities of the series and any security for the obligations of the Company with respect to such Securities;

(21) whether the Securities of the series are secured or unsecured, and if the Securities are secured, the terms of the secured Securities;

(22) information describing any book-entry features;

(23) the identity of any guarantors and the terms of the guarantees; and

(24) any and all other terms with respect to the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture, as amended by any Board Resolution or supplemental indenture, but which may modify or delete any provisions of this Indenture insofar as it applies to such series), including any terms which may be required by or advisable under the laws of the U.S. or regulations thereunder or advisable (as determined by the Company) in connection with the marketing of Securities of that series.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the secretary or an assistant secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officer's Certificate of the Company setting forth the terms of the series.

Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates. A series may be reopened for issuances of additional Securities of such series or to establish additional terms of such Securities.

## **SECTION 2.2 FORM OF SECURITIES AND TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE.**

The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, and they may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the

---

provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any securities exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.

### **SECTION 2.3 DENOMINATIONS; PROVISIONS FOR PAYMENT.**

The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the minimum denomination of two thousand U.S. dollars (\$2,000) or any integral multiple of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) in excess thereof, subject to Section 2.1(11). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rate specified with respect to that series. The principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the U.S. that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in the United States, which shall initially be an office or agency of the Trustee. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication. Interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months. Presentment and surrender of the Securities will be required for final payment thereon.

The interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.3.

Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called “**Defaulted Interest**”) shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

(1) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid (or, in the case of Securities held in book-entry form, by electronic transmission), to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register (as hereinafter defined), not less than 10 days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof, the term “**regular record date**” as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities and any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the last day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

---

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and Sections 2.5 and 2.11, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

#### **SECTION 2.4 EXECUTION AND AUTHENTICATION.**

The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by an Authorized Officer and, to the extent necessary, under its corporate seal. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature.

The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been an Authorized Officer thereof, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be such an officer of the Company. To the extent a Company seal is necessary, the Company seal may be in the form of a facsimile of such seal and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication by the Trustee.

A Security shall not be valid until authenticated manually by an authorized signatory of the Trustee. Such signature shall be conclusive evidence that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the holder is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by an Authorized Officer, and the Trustee in accordance with such Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities.

In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall receive, and (subject to Section 7.1) shall be fully protected in conclusively relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture.

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

#### **SECTION 2.5 REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE.**

(a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office of the Security Registrar, for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

(b) Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office of the Security Registrar, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and the Security Registrar shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount.

All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar, duly executed by the registered holder or by such holder's duly authorized attorney in writing.

(c) Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.1 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, no service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial repurchase or redemption of any series, but the Company and the Trustee may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.6, Section 3.3(b) and Section 9.4 not involving any transfer.

(d) The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any

---

Securities of any series or portion thereof called for redemption, other than the unredeemed portion of any such Securities being redeemed in part.

(e) Successive registrations and registrations of transfers and exchanges as aforesaid may be made from time to time as desired, and each such registration shall be noted on the register for the Securities.

(f) The Security Registrar shall provide to the Trustee such information as the Trustee may reasonably require in connection with the delivery by such Security Registrar of Securities upon transfer or exchange of Securities.

(g) The provisions of this Section 2.5 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

(h) The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among Depository participants or beneficial owners of interests in any Global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof.

(i) Neither the Trustee nor any agent shall have any responsibility or liability for any actions taken or not taken by the Depository.

## **SECTION 2.6            TEMPORARY SECURITIES.**

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the holders), at the office of the Security Registrar, and the Trustee shall authenticate and the Security Registrar shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

## **SECTION 2.7            MUTILATED, DESTROYED, LOST OR STOLEN SECURITIES.**

In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon a Company Request, the Trustee (subject as aforesaid) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case, the requirements of Section 8-405 of the Uniform Commercial Code shall be met and the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the delivery of a Company Order. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

---

Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

#### **SECTION 2.8 CANCELLATION.**

All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any Paying Agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On the delivery of a Company Order at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall cancel Securities held by the Trustee in accordance with its standard procedures and applicable law and provide confirmation to the Company of such cancellation if requested by the Company. In the absence of such request, the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver evidence of cancellation to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

#### **SECTION 2.9 BENEFITS OF INDENTURE.**

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the holders of the Securities any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the holders of the Securities.

#### **SECTION 2.10 AUTHENTICATING AGENT.**

So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a corporation that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately.

Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon a Company Request shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto.

#### **SECTION 2.11 GLOBAL SECURITIES.**

---

(a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.1 that the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.4, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, all of the Outstanding Securities of such series, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.11 of this Indenture, this Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to another nominee of the Depository or to a successor Depository or to a nominee of such successor Depository."

(b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.5, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.5, only to another nominee of the Depository for such series, or to a successor Depository for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depository. Nothing in this Section 2.11(b) shall prohibit or render ineffective any transfer of a beneficial interest in a Global Security effected in accordance with the other provisions of this Indenture.

(c) If at any time the Depository for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depository for such series or if at any time the Depository for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depository for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, or if an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing and the Company has received a request from the Depository, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.4, the Trustee will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and, subject to Section 2.4, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officer's Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company, will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depository, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

#### **SECTION 2.12 CUSIP AND ISIN NUMBERS.**

The Company, in issuing the Securities, shall use CUSIP and ISIN numbers for such Securities (if then generally in use). The Trustee shall use CUSIP and ISIN numbers in notices of redemption as a convenience to holders; provided, however, that neither the Company nor the Trustee shall have any responsibility for any defect in the CUSIP or ISIN number that appears on any Security, check, advice of payment or redemption notice, and any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company shall promptly notify the Trustee in writing in the event of any change in the CUSIP or ISIN numbers.

### **ARTICLE III**

#### **REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS**

##### **SECTION 3.1 REDEMPTION.**

The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof. The provisions of this Article III may be modified, amended or replaced, in part or in their entirety, with Securities of any series, by an Officer's Certificate pursuant to a Board Resolution or one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case in accordance with Section 2.1 hereof.

##### **SECTION 3.2 NOTICE OF REDEMPTION.**

(a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with any right the Company reserved for itself to do so pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof, the Company shall, or

---

shall cause the Trustee to, give notice of such redemption to holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid (or, in the case of Securities held in book-entry form, by electronic transmission), a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 60 days (except in accordance with Articles XI and XII) before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officer's Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction.

Each such notice of redemption shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Paying Agent or as otherwise established in a Board Resolution or an indenture supplemental hereto, upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is from a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed.

In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

(b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 45 days' notice (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee) in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, (i) if the Securities are in the form of Global Securities, in accordance with the procedures of the Depository, or (ii) if the Securities are not in the form of Global Securities, by lot, a portion or portions (equal to one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than \$2,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by an Authorized Officer, instruct the Trustee or any Paying Agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such Paying Agent may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the Trustee or any such Paying Agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such Paying Agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such Paying Agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section.

### **SECTION 3.3 PAYMENT UPON REDEMPTION.**

(a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an interest payment date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.3).

(b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

### **SECTION 3.4 SINKING FUND.**

---

If Securities of a series provide for a sinking fund as contemplated by Section 2.1, the provisions of this Section 3.4 and Sections 3.5 and 3.6 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.1 for Securities of such series.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “**mandatory sinking fund payment**,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “**optional sinking fund payment**.” If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.5. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

### **SECTION 3.5 SATISFACTION OF SINKING FUND PAYMENTS WITH SECURITIES.**

The Company (i) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series and (ii) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

### **SECTION 3.6 REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES FOR SINKING FUND.**

Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities (unless a shorter period shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officer’s Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.5 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officer’s Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.2 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.2. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.3.

## **ARTICLE IV COVENANTS**

### **SECTION 4.1 PAYMENT OF PRINCIPAL, PREMIUM AND INTEREST.**

The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of that series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities. Payments of principal on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check drawn on and mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such a wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions to the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date). Payments of interest on the Securities may be made at the time provided herein and established with respect to such Securities by U.S. dollar check mailed to the address of the Securityholder entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register, or U.S. dollar wire transfer to, a U.S. dollar account (such a wire transfer to be made only to a Securityholder of an aggregate principal amount of Securities of the applicable series in excess of U.S. \$2,000,000 and only if such Securityholder shall have furnished wire instructions in writing to the Security Registrar and the Trustee no later than 15 days prior to the relevant payment date).

### **SECTION 4.2 PAYING AGENT AND SECURITY REGISTRAR.**

(a) So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company shall maintain an office or agency where Securities may be presented for registration of transfer or for exchange (“**Security Registrar**”), an office or agency where Securities may be

---

presented for payment (“**Paying Agent**”) and an office or agency where notices to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities and this Indenture may be served. The Security Registrar shall keep a register for the recordation of, and shall record, the names and addresses of holders of the Securities, the Securities held by each holder and the transfer and exchange of Securities (the “**Security Register**”). The entries in the Security Register shall be conclusive, and the parties may treat each Person whose name is recorded in the Security Register pursuant to the terms hereof as a holder hereunder for all purposes of this Indenture. The Company may have one or more co-Security Registrars and one or more additional Paying Agents.

The Company hereby initially designates the Trustee as Paying Agent and Security Registrar, and the Corporate Trust Office shall be considered as one such office or agency of the Company for each of the aforesaid purposes, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by an Authorized Officer and delivered to the Trustee, designate some other office or agency for such purposes or any of them.

(b) The Company shall enter into an appropriate agency agreement with any Security Registrar, Paying Agent, or co-registrar not a party to this Indenture, which shall incorporate the terms of the Trust Indenture Act. The agreement shall implement the provisions of this Indenture that relate to such agent. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the name and address of any such agent. If the Company fails to maintain a Security Registrar or Paying Agent, the Trustee shall act as such and shall be entitled to appropriate compensation therefor. The Company and any of its Subsidiaries may act as Paying Agent, Security Registrar or co-registrar.

(c) If the Company shall appoint one or more Paying Agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such Paying Agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:

(1) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;

(2) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;

(3) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(2) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent; and

(4) that it will perform all other duties of Paying Agent as set forth in this Indenture.

(d) If the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the Paying Agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.

(e) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by the Company or any Paying Agent to the Trustee, the Company or such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

#### **SECTION 4.3 APPOINTMENT TO FILL VACANCY IN OFFICE OF TRUSTEE.**

---

The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.10, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

**SECTION 4.4 COMPLIANCE WITH CONSOLIDATION PROVISIONS.**

The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell or convey all or substantially all of its property to any other Person unless the provisions of Article X hereof are complied with.

**ARTICLE V  
SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY  
THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE**

**SECTION 5.1 COMPANY TO FURNISH TRUSTEE NAMES AND ADDRESSES OF SECURITYHOLDERS.**

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) on each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.3) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that, in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

**SECTION 5.2 PRESERVATION OF INFORMATION; COMMUNICATIONS WITH SECURITYHOLDERS.**

(a) The Trustee shall preserve in as current a form as is reasonably practicable the most recent list available to it of the names and addresses of the Securityholders of each series of Securities and shall otherwise comply with Section 312(a) of the Trust Indenture Act. If the Trustee is not the Security Registrar, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee at least ten (10) days before each interest payment date with respect to any series of Securities and at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing a list, in such form and as of such date as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Securityholders of such series of Securities, which list may be conclusively relied upon by the Trustee.

(b) Securityholders of any series may communicate pursuant to Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders of that series or any other series with respect to their rights under this Indenture or the Securities of that series or any other series.

(c) The Company, the Trustee, the Security Registrar and any other Person shall have the protection of Section 312(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

**SECTION 5.3 REPORTS BY THE COMPANY.**

(a) So long as any Security is Outstanding, the Company shall furnish a copy to the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company files the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company files with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; provided, however, the Company shall not be required to deliver to the Trustee any materials for which the Company has sought and received confidential treatment by the Commission; and provided further, so long as such filings by the Company are available on the Commission's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval System (EDGAR), such filings shall be deemed to have been furnished to the Trustee for purposes of this Section 5.3 without any further action required by the Company. The Trustee shall have no obligation whatsoever to determine whether or not such filings have been made.

(b) Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee shall be for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of the covenants contained in this Indenture (as to which the Trustee is entitled to conclusively rely upon an Officer's Certificate).

**SECTION 5.4 REPORTS BY THE TRUSTEE.**

---

(a) The Trustee shall transmit to the Securityholders such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required pursuant to the Trust Indenture Act at the time and in the manner provided pursuant thereto. If required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall, within 60 days after each May 15 following the date of this Indenture, deliver to holders a brief report, dated as of such May 15, which complies with the provisions of such Section 313(a).

(b) The Trustee shall comply with Section 313(b) and 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each securities exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

## ARTICLE VI REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

### SECTION 6.1       EVENTS OF DEFAULT.

(a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, unless otherwise specified in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto, “**Event of Default**” means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing:

(1) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and such default continues for a period of 30 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;

(2) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;

(3) the Company defaults in the performance or breach of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.1 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 consecutive days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “**Notice of Default**” hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding;

(4) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law (i) commences a voluntary case, (ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case, (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property or (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors;

(5) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case, (ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property or (iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 60 consecutive days; or

(6) certain other specified events, as may be provided for in a Board Resolution or in a supplemental indenture.

(b) In each and every such case (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (4) or clause (5) above), unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may, and the Trustee at the request of the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then outstanding hereunder shall, declare the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (4) or clause (5) above occurs, the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on all the Securities of that series shall automatically be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or the holders of the Securities.

---

(c) At any time after the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before any judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration (with interest upon such principal and premium, if any, and, to the extent that such payment is enforceable under applicable law, upon overdue installments of interest, at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series to the date of such payment or deposit) and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.6, and (ii) any and all Events of Default under this Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest on Securities of that series that shall not have become due by their terms, shall have been remedied or waived as provided in Section 6.6.

No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

(d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

## **SECTION 6.2 COLLECTION OF INDEBTEDNESS AND SUITS FOR ENFORCEMENT BY TRUSTEE.**

(a) The Company covenants that (i) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, and such default shall have continued for a period of 30 days, or (ii) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series as and when the same shall have become due and payable, then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.6.

(b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceeding at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law or equity out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.

(c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affecting the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under this Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.6; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.6.

(d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of that series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.6, be for the ratable benefit of the holders of the Securities of such series.

---

In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

### **SECTION 6.3 APPLICATION OF MONEYS COLLECTED.**

Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article VI with respect to a particular series of Securities shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon of the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of reasonable costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee under Section 7.6;

SECOND: To the payment to holders of Securities of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any), amounts payable upon redemption or repurchase of the Securities, and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively; and

THIRD: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person lawfully entitled thereto.

The Trustee may fix a record date and payment date for any payment to holders pursuant to this Section 6.3. At least 15 days before such record date, the Company shall mail to each holder and the Trustee a notice that states the record date, the payment date and the amount to be paid.

### **SECTION 6.4 LIMITATION ON SUITS.**

No holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (i) such holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided; (ii) the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as Trustee hereunder; (iii) such holder or holders shall have offered to the Trustee such indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, losses, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; (iv) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and (v) during such 60 day period, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary or any other provisions of this Indenture, the right of any holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and holder and the Trustee, that no one or more holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all holders of Securities of such series (it being understood that the Trustee does not have an affirmative duty to ascertain

---

whether or not such actions or forbearances are unduly prejudicial to such holders). For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

#### **SECTION 6.5 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES CUMULATIVE; DELAY OR OMISSION NOT WAIVER.**

(a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.7, all powers and remedies given by this Article VI to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.

(b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or an acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.4, every power and remedy given by this Article VI or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

#### **SECTION 6.6 CONTROL BY SECURITYHOLDERS.**

The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.4, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Trust Officer or officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed, subject to the Trustee's duties under the Trust Indenture Act, would involve the Trustee in personal liability or might be unduly prejudicial to the Securityholders not involved in the proceeding. The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding affected thereby, determined in accordance with Section 8.4, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.1 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.1(c)), which requires the consent of each holder affected by such waiver. Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon.

#### **SECTION 6.7 UNDERTAKING TO PAY COSTS.**

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each holder of any Securities by such holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

### **ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE**

#### **SECTION 7.1 CERTAIN DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRUSTEE.**

(a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of that series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall

---

be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs. Except during the continuance of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series, in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions which by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of mathematical calculations or other facts stated therein).

(b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this subsection (b) shall not be construed to limit the effect of subsection (a) of this Section;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Trust Officer or Trust Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and

(iv) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability is not reasonably assured to it under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

(c) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section.

## **SECTION 7.2 CERTAIN RIGHTS OF TRUSTEE.**

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.1:

(a) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

(b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company by any authorized officer of the Company (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);

(c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;

(d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it against the costs, losses, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived), to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his or her own affairs;

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

---

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents, unless requested in writing so to do by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the particular series affected thereby (determined as provided in Section 8.4), and, if so requested, except as otherwise prohibited by applicable law or as would reasonably be expected to violate or result in the loss or impairment of any attorney-client or work product privilege, the Trustee shall be entitled to examine the books, records, and premises of the Company, personally or by agent, or attorney, and it shall incur no liability or additional liability of any kind by reason of such inquiry or investigation; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to provide access or furnish information in the event of any litigation involving this Indenture or the Securities except pursuant to applicable rules of discovery; and provided, further, that if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require reasonable indemnity against such costs, expenses or liabilities as a condition to so proceeding. The reasonable expense of every such examination shall be paid by the Company or, if paid by the Trustee, shall be repaid by the Company upon demand;

(g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(h) In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(i) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Trust Officer has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture;

(j) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder;

(k) The Trustee shall not be required to give any bond or surety in respect of the performance of its powers and duties hereunder;

(l) The Trustee shall not be liable for the acts or omissions of any other agent of the Company, and may assume performance by any such agent of its duties, absent written notice or actual knowledge to the contrary; and

(m) The permissive right of the Trustee to take the actions permitted by this Indenture shall not be construed as an obligation or duty to do so.

### **SECTION 7.3 TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS OR ISSUANCE OR SECURITIES.**

(a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.

(b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.

(c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.1, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any Paying Agent other than the Trustee.

### **SECTION 7.4 MAY HOLD SECURITIES AND OTHERWISE DEAL WITH THE COMPANY.**

Subject to the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee, the Security Registrar, any Paying Agent or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may buy, own, hold, sell and become the pledgee of any of the Securities or any other evidences of indebtedness or other securities, whether heretofore or hereafter created or issued, of the Company or any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Security Registrar, Paying Agent or such other agent; and the Trustee may engage or be interested in any financial or other transaction with the Company or any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company, including, without limitation, secured and unsecured loans to the Company or any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company; and may maintain any and all other general banking and business relations with the Company and any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company

---

with like effect and in the same manner and to the same extent as if the Trustee were not a party to this Indenture; and no implied covenant shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee in respect of any such matters.

**SECTION 7.5 MONEYS HELD IN TRUST.**

Subject to the provisions of Sections 11.2, 12.5, 12.6 and 12.7, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

**SECTION 7.6 COMPENSATION AND REIMBURSEMENT.**

(a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust) as the Company and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its negligence or willful misconduct and except as the Company and Trustee may from time to time agree in writing. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, costs, damages, liability or expense incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Trustee (as determined by a court of competent jurisdiction in a final and non-appealable judgment) and arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim of liability in the premises.

(b) To secure the Company's payment obligations in this Section 7.6, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any series on all money or property held or collected by the Trustee, except that held in trust to pay principal of and interest on particular Securities of such series.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services after an Event of Default specified in Section 6.1(a)(4) or 6.1(a)(5) occurs, the expenses and the compensation for the services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any Bankruptcy Law.

The provisions of this Section 7.6 shall survive the resignation or removal of the Trustee and the termination or satisfaction of this Indenture.

**SECTION 7.7 RELIANCE ON OFFICER'S CERTIFICATE.**

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.1, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it reasonably necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

**SECTION 7.8 DISQUALIFICATION; CONFLICTING INTERESTS.**

If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

**SECTION 7.9 CORPORATE TRUSTEE REQUIRED; ELIGIBILITY.**

---

There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the U.S. or any state or territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having (or, in the case of a subsidiary of a bank holding company, its bank holding company parent shall have) a combined capital and surplus of at least one hundred million U.S. dollars (\$100,000,000), and subject to supervision or examination by federal, state, territorial, or District of Columbia authority.

If such corporation or other Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation or other Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.10.

#### **SECTION 7.10 RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL; APPOINTMENT OF SUCCESSOR.**

(a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid (or, in the case of Securities held in book-entry form, by electronic transmission), to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may at the expense of the Company, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or the holders of at least 10% in the aggregate principal amount of Outstanding Securities may petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

(b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:

(i) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.8 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or

(ii) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.9 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or

(iii) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation;

then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.

(c) The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may, upon 30 days' notice, remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.

(d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.11.

(e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

---

## **SECTION 7.11 ACCEPTANCE OF APPOINTMENT BY SUCCESSOR.**

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, (ii) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates.

(c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.

(d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article VII.

(e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

## **SECTION 7.12 MERGER, CONVERSION, CONSOLIDATION OR SUCCESSION TO BUSINESS.**

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee (including the administration of the trust created by this Indenture), shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such corporation shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.8 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.9, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

## **SECTION 7.13 PREFERENTIAL COLLECTION OF CLAIMS AGAINST THE COMPANY.**

---

The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

**SECTION 7.14 NOTICE OF DEFAULT.**

If any Default or any Event of Default occurs and is continuing and if the Trustee has notice of such Default or Event of Default, the Trustee shall mail to each Securityholder in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act notice of the Default or Event of Default within 90 days after it occurs (or, the Trustee does not have notice of such Default or Event of Default until after that time, 15 days after the Trustee has notice of such Default or Event of Default), unless such Default or Event of Default has been cured; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Securityholders.

**SECTION 7.15 LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**

The Trustee is entering into this Indenture and the other documents contemplated hereby and related hereto to which it is a party solely in its capacity as trustee under the Indenture and not in its individual capacity (except as expressly stated herein) and in no case shall the Trustee (or any Person acting as successor trustee under this Indenture) be personally liable for or on account of any of the statements, representations, warranties, covenants or obligations stated to be those of the Company hereunder or thereunder, all such liability, if any, being expressly waived by the parties hereto and any person claiming by, through or under such party.

**ARTICLE VIII  
CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS**

**SECTION 8.1 EVIDENCE OF ACTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.**

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such holders of Securities of that series in person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing.

If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officer's Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

**SECTION 8.2 PROOF OF EXECUTION BY SECURITYHOLDERS.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

- (a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.
-

(b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.

The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

**SECTION 8.3 WHO MAY BE DEEMED OWNERS.**

Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Security Registrar as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of, premium, if any, and (subject to Section 2.3) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any Paying Agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

**SECTION 8.4 CERTAIN SECURITIES OWNED BY COMPANY DISREGARDED.**

In determining whether the holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

**SECTION 8.5 ACTIONS BINDING ON FUTURE SECURITYHOLDERS.**

At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.1, of the taking of any action by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.2, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such holder and upon all future holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the holders of all the Securities of that series.

**ARTICLE IX  
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

**SECTION 9.1 SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITHOUT THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.**

In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

(a) to cure any ambiguity, defect, omission or inconsistency herein or in the Securities of any series (with such ambiguity, defect, omission or inconsistency being evidenced by an Officer's Certificate);

(b) to comply with Article X, including to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities contained or to provide for the assumption of a

---

guarantor's obligations to holders of the Securities in the case of a merger or consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of the guarantor's assets;

(c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities; provided that the uncertificated Securities are issued in registered form for purposes of Section 163(f) of the Code;

(d) to add to the covenants of the Company or any guarantor for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of any series or to surrender any right or power conferred upon the Company or any guarantor;

(e) to provide for the issuance of additional Securities of any series in accordance with the terms of this Indenture;

(f) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor trustee;

(g) to comply with any requirements of the Commission or any successor in connection with the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act;

(h) to provide security for the Securities of any series or to provide for any guarantee of the Securities of any series or to confirm or evidence the release, termination or discharge of any guarantee of or lien securing the Securities of any series when such release, termination or discharge is permitted by this Indenture;

(i) to make any change that would provide any additional rights or benefits to the holders of the Securities of any series or that does not adversely affect the legal rights under this Indenture of any holder;

(j) to make any amendment to the provision of this Indenture relating to the transfer and legending of the Securities of any series; provided, however, that (1) compliance with this Indenture as so amended would not result in Securities of such series being transferred in violation of the Securities Act or any other applicable securities law and (2) such amendment does not materially and adversely affect the rights of holders to transfer Securities of such series; or

(k) to conform the text of this Indenture, any guarantee of the Securities of any series or the notes to any provision of the "Description of Debt Securities and Guarantees" included in the prospectus forming a part of the registration statement filed by the Company with the Commission on Form S-3 on August 4, 2016 or any subsequent description of Securities contained in any prospectus supplement, to the extent that such provision in that "Description of Debt Securities and Guarantees" or any subsequent description of Securities contained in any prospectus supplement was intended by the Company to be a verbatim recitation of a provision of this Indenture, any guarantee of the Securities of any series or the Securities, as applicable (with such intention being evidenced by an Officer's Certificate).

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.2.

## **SECTION 9.2**

### **SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES WITH THE CONSENT OF SECURITYHOLDERS.**

With the consent (evidenced as provided in Section 8.1) of the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of each series affected by such supplemental indenture or indentures at the time Outstanding (including consents obtained in connection with a tender offer or exchange offer for the Securities), the Company, when authorized by a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall comply with the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating (or waiving any past default or compliance with) any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.1 the rights of the holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby,

(a) reduce the percentage or aggregate principal amount of Securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any modification, amendment, supplement or waiver;

---

(b) reduce the principal amount of, or premium, if any, or rate of interest on, such Securities;

(c) extend the fixed maturity of such Securities;

(d) extend the time for payment of interest on such Securities;

(e) reduce the redemption or repurchase price of such Securities or change the time at which the Securities may or must be redeemed or repurchased;

(f) change the currency of payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, such Securities;

(g) waive a default in the payment of principal of, premium, if any, or interest on such Securities (except as provided in Section 6.1(c));

(h) voluntarily release a guarantor of such Securities other than in accordance with this Indenture;

(i) reduce the percentage or aggregate principal amount of Outstanding Securities the consent of whose holders is necessary for waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or for waiver of certain defaults; or

(j) impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on or after the stated maturity (or, in the case of a redemption, on or after the redemption date) of such Securities.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

### **SECTION 9.3 EFFECT OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.**

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article IX or of Section 10.1, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

### **SECTION 9.4 SECURITIES AFFECTED BY SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.**

Securities of any series affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article IX or of Section 10.1, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any securities exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

### **SECTION 9.5 EXECUTION OF SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES.**

Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee shall receive, in addition to the documents required by Section 14.7(a), an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that and as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article IX is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article IX, constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable against it in accordance with its terms (subject to customary exceptions) and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article IX to join in the execution thereof.

---

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Company shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Company to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

## **ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY**

### **SECTION 10.1 COMPANY MAY CONSOLIDATE, ETC.**

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.1 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, nothing contained in this Indenture shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other corporation (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, (a) the due and punctual payment of the principal of (premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor, and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture with respect to each series or established with respect to such series pursuant to Section 2.1 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property and (b) in the event that the Securities of any series then Outstanding are convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock or other securities of the Company, such entity shall, by such supplemental indenture, make provision so that the Securityholders of Securities of that series shall thereafter be entitled to receive upon conversion or exchange of such Securities the number of securities or property to which a holder of the number of shares of common stock or other securities of the Company deliverable upon conversion or exchange of those Securities would have been entitled had such conversion or exchange occurred immediately prior to such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition.

### **SECTION 10.2 SUCCESSOR ENTITY SUBSTITUTED.**

(a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by the successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee and satisfactory in form to the Trustee of the obligations set forth under Section 10.1 on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

(b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.

(c) Nothing contained in this Article X shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

### **SECTION 10.3 EVIDENCE OF CONSOLIDATION, ETC. TO TRUSTEE.**

The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.1, shall receive an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that and as conclusive evidence that any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article X.

## **ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

---

**SECTION 11.1****SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE.**

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series herein expressly provided for or in the form of Security for such series and any right to receive additional amounts), and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series, when

(a) either

(i) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.7 and (ii) Securities for whose payment cash, Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Sections 12.5 and 12.6) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(ii) all such Securities of such series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or

(A) have become due and payable by reason of the mailing of a notice of redemption or otherwise, or

(B) will become due and payable within one year,

and the Company, in the case of (A) or (B) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Securityholders of the Securities of that series, cash in U.S. dollars, Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof in such amount as will be sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable), or to the Stated Maturity or the Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(b) in respect of clause (a)(ii), no Event of Default has occurred and is continuing on the date of deposit (other than an Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit and any similar deposit relating to other indebtedness and, in each case, the granting of certain liens to secure such borrowing);

(c) the Company or any guarantor has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to such series; and

(d) the Company has delivered irrevocable instructions to the Trustee under this Indenture to apply the deposited money towards the payment of the notes at maturity or on the redemption date, as the case may be.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to such series, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee with respect to such series under this Section 11.1 and Sections 7.6 and 7.10, the obligations of the Company to any Authenticating Agent under Section 2.10, and, if cash, Governmental Obligations or a combination thereof shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (ii) of clause (a) of this Section, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 11.2, shall survive.

**SECTION 11.2****APPLICATION OF TRUST MONEY.**

Subject to the provisions of Section 12.6, all cash and Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 11.1 shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of the series of Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company or any of its Subsidiaries acting as Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Securities for which payment of such cash and Governmental Obligations has been deposited with the Trustee.

If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any cash or Governmental Obligations in accordance with this Article XI by reason of any legal proceeding or by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the obligations of the Company under this Indenture and the Securities of such series shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to this Article XI until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted

---

to apply all such cash and Governmental Obligations in accordance with this Article XI; provided, however, that, if the Company has made any payment of principal, premium, if any, interest on or principal of any Securities because of the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the cash and Governmental Obligations held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

## **ARTICLE XII LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE**

### **SECTION 12.1      OPTION TO EFFECT LEGAL DEFEASANCE OR COVENANT DEFEASANCE.**

The Company may at any time, at the option of its Board of Directors evidenced by a Board Resolution set forth in an Officer's Certificate, elect to have either Section 12.2 or 12.3 hereof be applied to all outstanding Securities of a series upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article XII.

### **SECTION 12.2      LEGAL DEFEASANCE AND DISCHARGE.**

Upon the Company's exercise under Section 12.1 hereof of the option applicable to this Section 12.2 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company will, subject to the satisfaction of the conditions set forth in Section 12.4 hereof, be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to all outstanding Securities of such series on the date the conditions set forth below are satisfied (hereinafter, "**Legal Defeasance**"). For this purpose, Legal Defeasance means that the Company will be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire Indebtedness represented by the Outstanding Securities of such series, which will thereafter be deemed to be Outstanding only for the purposes of Section 12.5 hereof and the Articles and other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (1) and (2) below, and to have satisfied all their other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture (and the Trustee, on demand of and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following provisions which will survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder:

- (1) the rights of holders of Outstanding Securities of such series to receive payments in respect of the principal of, premium on, if any, or interest on such Securities when such payments are due from the trust referred to in Section 12.4 hereof;
- (2) the Issuers' obligations with respect to such Securities under Article 2 and Section 4.2 hereof;
- (3) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and the Company's obligations in connection therewith; and
- (4) this Article XII.

Subject to compliance with this Article XII, the Company may exercise its option under this Section 12.2 with respect to a series of Securities, notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 12.3 hereof with respect to such series of Securities.

### **SECTION 12.3      COVENANT DEFEASANCE.**

Upon the Company's exercise under Section 12.1 hereof of the option applicable to this Section 12.3 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company will, subject to the satisfaction of the conditions set forth in Section 12.4 hereof, be released from its obligations under Section 5.3 and Article X and any additional covenants specified in any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto with respect to the Outstanding Securities of such series on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 12.4 hereof are satisfied (hereinafter, "**Covenant Defeasance**"), and the Securities of such series will thereafter be deemed not Outstanding for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or act of holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenants, but will continue to be deemed Outstanding for all other purposes hereunder (it being understood that such Securities will not be deemed Outstanding for accounting purposes). For this purpose, Covenant Defeasance means that, with respect to the Outstanding Securities of such series, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in Section 5.3 or Article X and any additional covenants specified in any Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto, whether

---

directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or Article or by reason of any reference in any such Section or Article to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under Section 6.1 hereof with respect to Outstanding Securities of such series, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

#### **SECTION 12.4 CONDITIONS TO LEGAL OR COVENANT DEFEASANCE.**

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance under either Section 12.2 or 12.3 hereof with respect to the Outstanding Securities of a particular series:

(1) the Company must irrevocably deposit with the Trustee, in trust, for the benefit of the Securityholders of the Securities of that series, cash in U.S. dollars, Governmental Obligations, or a combination thereof, in such amounts as will be sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm, or firm of independent public accountants, to pay the principal of, premium on, if any, and interest on, the Outstanding Securities of such series on the stated date for payment thereof or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be, and the Company must specify whether the Securities of such series are being defeased to such stated date for payment or to a particular redemption date;

(2) in the case of an election under Section 12.2 hereof, the Company must deliver to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee confirming that:

(A) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling; or

(B) since the date of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law,

in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such Opinion of Counsel shall confirm that, the holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred;

(3) in the case of an election under Section 12.3 hereof, the Company must deliver to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee confirming that the holders of the Outstanding Securities of such series will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred;

(4) no Default or Event of Default with respect to the Securities of such series shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the borrowing of funds to be applied to such deposit (and any similar concurrent deposit relating to other Indebtedness), and the granting of liens to secure such borrowings);

(5) such Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material agreement or instrument (other than this Indenture and the agreements governing any other Indebtedness being defeased, discharged or replaced) to which the Company is a party or by which the Company is bound; and

(6) the Company must deliver to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance have been complied with.

#### **SECTION 12.5 DEPOSITED MONEY AND GOVERNMENT SECURITIES TO BE HELD IN TRUST; OTHER MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.**

Subject to Section 12.6 hereof, all cash and Governmental Obligations (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 12.4 hereof in respect of the Outstanding Securities of a particular series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal, premium, if any, and interest, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

---

The Company will pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the cash or Governmental Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 12.4 hereof or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the holders of the Outstanding Securities of the applicable series.

Notwithstanding anything in this Article XII to the contrary, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any cash or Governmental Obligations held by it as provided in Section 12.4 hereof which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee (which may be the opinion delivered under Section 12.4(1) hereof), are in excess of the amount thereof that would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

#### **SECTION 12.6 REPAYMENT TO COMPANY.**

Any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of, premium on, if any, or interest on any Security and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium, if any, or interest, has become due and payable shall, unless otherwise required by mandatory provisions of applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law, be paid to the Company on its request or (if then held by the Company) will be discharged from such trust; and the holder of such Security will thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, be permitted to look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, will thereupon cease; *provided, however*, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may give written notice to the holder of such Security, at such holder's address as it appears upon the Security Register, that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which will not be less than 30 days from the date of such notification, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will, unless otherwise required by mandatory provisions of applicable escheat or abandoned or unclaimed property law, be repaid to the Company.

#### **SECTION 12.7 REINSTATEMENT.**

If the Trustee or Paying Agent is unable to apply any cash or Governmental Obligations in accordance with Section 12.2 or 12.3 hereof, as the case may be, by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's obligations under this Indenture and the Securities of the particular series shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 12.2 or 12.3 hereof until such time as the Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such cash or Governmental Obligations in accordance with Section 12.2 or 12.3 hereof, as the case may be; *provided, however*, that, if the Company makes any payment of principal of, premium on, if any, or interest on, any Security of the particular series following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the cash or Governmental Obligations held by the Trustee or Paying Agent.

### **ARTICLE XIII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS**

#### **SECTION 13.1 NO RECOURSE.**

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

---

**ARTICLE XIV  
MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**SECTION 14.1 EFFECT ON SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS.**

All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture made by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not. All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture made by or on behalf of the Trustee shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

**SECTION 14.2 ACTIONS BY SUCCESSOR.**

Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

**SECTION 14.3 SURRENDER OF COMPANY POWERS.**

The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

**SECTION 14.4 NOTICES.**

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, any notice, request or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given, made or served by the Trustee or by the holders of Securities or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited in first class mail, postage prepaid, addressed, as follows: SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., 2100 East 54th Street North Sioux Falls, South Dakota 57104, Attention: Secretary. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder or by any other Person pursuant to this Indenture to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

**SECTION 14.5 GOVERNING LAW/WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.**

This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the internal laws of the State of New York, and for all purposes shall be construed in accordance with the laws of said State, except to the extent that the Trust Indenture Act is applicable. EACH PARTY HERETO HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT.

**SECTION 14.6 TREATMENT OF SECURITIES AS DEBT.**

It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

**SECTION 14.7 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES AND OPINIONS.**

(a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

---

(b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include (i) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition; (ii) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (iii) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is reasonably necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (iv) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

#### **SECTION 14.8 PAYMENTS ON BUSINESS DAYS.**

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.1 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and set forth in an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

#### **SECTION 14.9 CONFLICT WITH TRUST INDENTURE ACT.**

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with any provision of the Trust Indenture Act, such Trust Indenture Act provision shall control.

#### **SECTION 14.10 COUNTERPARTS.**

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

#### **SECTION 14.11 SEVERABILITY.**

In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

#### **SECTION 14.12 COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATES.**

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year during which any Securities of any series were outstanding, an Officer's Certificate stating whether or not the signers know of any Default or Event of Default that occurred during such fiscal year. Such certificate shall contain a certification from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company that a review has been conducted of the activities of the Company and the Company's performance under this Indenture and that the Company has complied with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 14.12, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice provided under this Indenture. If any of the officers of the Company signing such certificate has knowledge of such a Default or Event of Default, the certificate shall describe any such Default or Event of Default and its status.

#### **SECTION 14.13 USA PATRIOT ACT**

The parties hereto acknowledge that, in accordance with Section 326 of the USA Patriot Act (Title III of Pub. L. 107-56 (signed into law October 26, 2001)) (as amended, modified or supplemented from time to time, the "USA Patriot Act"), the Trustee, like all financial institutions, is required to obtain, verify, and record information that identifies each Person or legal entity that opens an account. The parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide the Trustee with such information as the Trustee may request in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the USA Patriot Act.

#### **SECTION 14.14 CONSENT TO JURISDICTION AND SERVICE**

---

To the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, each party hereby irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any Federal or State court located in the Borough of Manhattan in The City of New York, New York in any suit, action or proceeding based on or arising out of or relating to this Indenture or any Securities and irrevocably agrees that all claims in respect of such suit or proceeding may be determined in any such court. Each party irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection which it may have to the laying of the venue of any such suit, action or proceeding brought in an inconvenient forum. Each party agrees that final judgment in any such suit, action or proceeding brought in such a court shall be conclusive and binding upon such party, and may be enforced in any courts to the jurisdiction of which such party is subject by a suit upon such judgment, provided, that service of process is effected upon such party in the manner specified herein or as otherwise permitted by law.

**SECTION 14.15      FORCE MAJEURE**

In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts which are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

*[Signature page follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

SAB BIOTHERAPEUTICS, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:  
  
, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

---

Dentons US LLP  
1221 Avenue of the  
Americas, New York  
NY 10020-1089 United States

dentons.com

December 29, 2025

SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.  
777 W 41st St., Suite 401  
Miami Beach, Florida 33140

Re: SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), in connection with the preparation and filing of a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the "Registration Statement") with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), relating to the registration under the Securities Act and the proposed issuance and sale from time to time by the Company of up to an aggregate offering amount of \$300,000,000 of the following securities (each a "Company Security" and collectively, or in any combination, the "Company Securities"):

- (i) shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Common Stock");
- (ii) one or more classes or series of shares of the Company's preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (the "Preferred Stock");
- (iii) one or more series of debt securities, which may be senior or subordinated debt or senior or subordinated convertible debt (the "Debt Securities");
- (iv) warrants representing the rights to purchase shares of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, or Debt Securities (the "Warrants");
- (v) subscription rights to purchase shares of Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the "Subscription Rights"); and
- (vi) units comprised of one or more of the Company Securities in one or more series and in any combination (the "Units").

For the purposes of this opinion letter, the Company Securities shall be deemed to include any additional Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities, Warrants, Subscription Rights and Units that may be registered pursuant to any registration statement that the Company may hereafter file with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act.

We advise you that we have also examined the prospectus supplement to the Registration Statement in connection with the registration under the Securities Act of up to \$75,000,000 of Common Stock (the "Shares") to be issued and sold by the Company. We understand that the Company has agreed to issue and sell the Shares, from time to time, through UBS Securities LLC, as sales agent (the "Agent"), pursuant to a Sales Agreement by and between the Company and the Agent, as amended (the "Sales Agreement").

---

This opinion letter is being furnished to the Company in accordance with the requirements of Item 601(b)(5) of Regulation S-K. The opinions set forth herein are limited to applicable laws as in effect on the date hereof.

The Company Securities may be issued and sold by the Company from time to time on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to applicable provisions of Rule 415 under the Securities Act, in amounts, at prices and on terms to be determined in light of market conditions at the time of sale, and as set forth in the Registration Statement, any amendment thereto, the prospectus contained therein (the "Base Prospectus") and any supplements to the Prospectus (each, together with the Base Prospectus, a "Prospectus"). We are basing this opinion letter on our understanding that, prior to issuing any Company Securities in connection with the Registration Statement, the Company will advise us in writing of the terms thereof and other information material thereto, will afford us an opportunity to review the operative documents pursuant to which such Company Securities are to be issued (including the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the applicable supplement to the Prospectus, as then in effect) and will file such supplement or amendment to this opinion letter (if any) as we may reasonably consider necessary or appropriate with respect to such Company Securities. However, we undertake no responsibility to monitor the Company's future compliance with applicable laws, rules or regulations of the Commission or other governmental body.

In connection with rendering this opinion, we have examined originals, certified copies or copies otherwise identified as being true copies of the following:

- (a) the Registration Statement;
- (b) the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, as amended and restated (the "Certificate of Incorporation");
- (c) the Bylaws of the Company, as amended and restated (the "Bylaws");
- (d) corporate proceedings of the Company relating to its proposed issuance of the Company Securities; and
- (e) such other instruments and documents as we have deemed relevant or necessary in connection with our opinions set forth herein.

Unless otherwise provided in any Prospectus relating to a particular series of Debt Securities, the Debt Securities will be issued pursuant to an indenture (the "Indenture") between the Company and a trustee to be named in the applicable supplement to the Prospectus (the "Trustee"). Any Debt Securities may be convertible into shares of Common Stock or other Company Securities. The Company Securities are to be sold pursuant to a purchase, underwriting or similar agreement in substantially the form to be filed under a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Warrants will be issued under one or more warrant agreements (each, a "Warrant Agreement"). The Subscription Rights will be issued under one or more subscription rights agreements (each a "Subscription Rights Agreement"). The Units will be issued under one or more unit purchase agreements (each a "Unit Purchase Agreement").

In making the aforesaid examinations, we have assumed the genuineness and authenticity of all documents examined by us and all signatures therein and the conformity to originals of all copies of all documents examined by us. We have also assumed that the corporate records furnished to us by the Company include all corporate proceedings taken by it to date.

Based on and subject to the assumptions, qualifications and limitations set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

(1) With respect to shares of Common Stock, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve an issuance of shares of Common Stock, and certificates representing the shares of Common Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered (or non-certificated shares of Common Stock shall have been properly issued), either (i) in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board of Directors"), upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Common Stock) provided for

in such definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as applicable, or (ii) upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any other Company Security in accordance with the terms of such Company Security or the instrument governing such Company Security providing for the conversion, exchange or exercise as approved by the Board of Directors, for the consideration therefor set forth in the applicable agreement and approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Common Stock, such shares of Common Stock, including the shares of Common Stock that form a part of any Units, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

(2) With respect to shares of any series of Preferred Stock, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve an issuance of shares of Preferred Stock and the terms of the shares of such series, including the adoption of a certificate of designation or amendment to the Certificate of Incorporation fixing and determining the terms of such Preferred Stock conforming to the Delaware General Corporation Law, the filing of a certificate or amendment, as applicable, with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, the payment in full of any filing fees attendant thereto, and the due reservation of any Common Stock and Preferred Stock for issuance, and certificates representing the shares of the series of Preferred Stock have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered, either (i) in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors, upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Preferred Stock) provided for in such definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, as applicable, or (ii) upon conversion, exchange or exercise of any other Company Security in accordance with the terms of such Company Security or the instrument governing such Company Security providing for the conversion, exchange or exercise as approved by the Board of Directors, for the consideration approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the par value of the Preferred Stock, the shares of such series of Preferred Stock, including the shares of Preferred Stock that form a part of any Units, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

(3) With respect to any series of Debt Securities, when (a) the Indenture and the applicable supplement, if any, to the Indenture have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and any Trustee named in the Prospectus relating to such series, (b) the Indenture, as then and theretofore amended or supplemented, has been duly qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “TIA”), (c) the Company has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the issuance and terms of such series of Debt Securities, (d) the terms of such Debt Securities and of their issuance and sale have been duly established in conformity with the applicable Indenture, and (e) such Debt Securities have been duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the provisions of the Indenture and the applicable supplement, the Debt Securities of such series, including the Debt Securities that form a part of any Units, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(4) With respect to Warrants to be issued under a Warrant Agreement, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve the issuance and terms of such Warrants, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, the Warrant Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company, and such Warrants have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the Warrant Agreement and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors, upon payment (or delivery) of the consideration therefor provided for therein, such Warrants, including the Warrants that form a part of any Units, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(5) With respect to Subscription Rights to be issued under a Subscription Rights Agreement, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve the issuance and terms of such Subscription Rights, the terms of the offering thereof and related matters, the Subscription Rights Agreement has been duly executed and delivered by the Company, and such Subscription Rights have been duly executed, issued and delivered in accordance with the terms of the Subscription Rights Agreement and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors of the Company, upon payment (or delivery) of the consideration therefor provided for therein, such Subscription Rights, including the Subscription Rights that

---

form a part of any Units, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(6) With respect to the Units, when all necessary corporate action of the Company has been taken to approve and establish the terms of the Units and to authorize and approve the issuance of the Company Securities comprising the Units, the terms of the offering and related matters, the Unit Purchase Agreement has been duly authorized, validly executed and delivered by the parties thereto, and the Units and/or the Company Securities comprising the Units have been duly executed and delivered in accordance with the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board of Directors, upon payment of the consideration provided therefor in the definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement as applicable and approved by the Board of Directors, which consideration shall not be less than the aggregate par value of any Common Stock and/or Preferred Stock included in the Units, the Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.

(7) The Shares to be issued and sold by the Company under the Sales Agreement have been duly authorized and, when such Shares are issued and delivered by the Company against payment therefore in accordance with the terms of the Sales Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

Our opinions are subject to the effect of federal and state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance and other laws relating to or affecting the rights of secured or unsecured creditors generally (or affecting the rights of only creditors of specific types of debtors), with respect to which we express no opinion.

Our opinions are subject to the effect of general principals of equity, whether applied by a court of law or equity, including, without limitation, concepts of materiality, good faith and fair dealing and upon the availability of injunctive relief or other equitable remedies, and the application of principles of equity (regardless of whether enforcement is considered in proceedings at law or in equity).

We express no opinion as to the laws of any jurisdiction other than (i) the corporate laws of the State of Delaware (including the Delaware General Corporation Law and applicable provisions of the Delaware constitution, but excluding local laws), (ii) with respect to opinion paragraphs 3 through 6, the laws of the State of New York, and (iii) the federal laws of the United States of America. We express no opinion to the extent that any other laws are applicable to the subject matter hereof and express no opinion and provide no assurance as to compliance with any federal or state securities law, rule or regulation.

We hereby consent to the use of our opinion as herein set forth as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the use of our name under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus forming a part of the Registration Statement. We further consent to the incorporation by reference of this opinion into any registration statement filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act with respect to additional Company Securities. We do not, by giving any such consent, admit that we are within the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Dentons US LLP  
**Dentons US LLP**

**CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement of SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc. on Form S-3 to be filed on or about December 29, 2025 of our report dated March 28, 2025, on our audits of the financial statements as of December 31, 2024 and 2023 and for each of the years then ended, which report was included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 31, 2025. Our report includes an explanatory paragraph about the existence of substantial doubt concerning the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. We also consent to the reference to our firm under the caption "Experts" in this Registration Statement.

*/s/ EisnerAmper LLP*

EISNERAMPER LLP  
Iselin, New Jersey  
December 29, 2025

---

**Calculation of Filing Fee Tables**

**Form S-3**

(Form Type)

**SAB Biotherapeutics, Inc.**

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Table 1: Newly Registered Securities

Security Type	Security Class Title	Fee Calculation Rule	Amount Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price per Unit	Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Fee Rate	Amount of Registration Fee	Carry Forward Form Type	Carry Forward Form File Number	Carry Forward Form Initial Effective Date	Filing Fee Previously Paid in Connection with Unsold Securities to be Carried Forward
Equity	Common Stock, par value \$0.0001 per share (1)	457 (o)									
Equity	Preferred Stock, \$0.0001 par value per share (1)	457 (o)									
Debt	Debt Securities	457 (o)									
Other	Warrants	457 (o)									
Other	Units	457 (o)									
Other	Rights	457 (o)									
Fees to be Paid	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf (1)	457 (o)			250,000.00	0.000138	\$ 34,525.00				
Fees Previously Paid	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A					
Carry Forward Securities	Unallocated (Universal) Shelf (2)	415(a)(6)			50,000.00			S-3	333-271768	May 17, 2023	\$ 5,510
					300,000.00		\$ 40,035.00				
							\$ 5,510.00				
							\$ 34,525.00				

(1) (i) An unspecified number of securities or aggregate principal amount, as applicable, is being registered as may from time to time be offered at unspecified prices and, in addition, an unspecified number of additional shares of common stock is being registered as may be issued from time to time upon conversion of any debt securities that are convertible into common stock or pursuant to any anti-dilution adjustments with respect to any such convertible debt securities.

(ii) Includes rights to acquire common stock or preferred stock of the Company under any shareholder rights plan then in effect, if applicable under the terms of any such plan.

(iii) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the registration fee. No separate consideration will be received for shares of common stock that are issued upon conversion of debt securities or preferred stock or upon exercise of common stock warrants registered hereunder. The aggregate maximum offering price of all securities issued pursuant to this registration statement will not exceed \$300,000,000.

(iv) The registration fee has been calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

(2) Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the securities being registered hereunder include \$50,000,000 of unsold securities which remain unsold as of the date hereof (the "Unsold Securities") previously registered by the registrant's registration on Form S-3 (File No. 333-271768) which was initially filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on May 9, 2023 and declared effective on May 17, 2023 (the "Prior Registration Statement"). The aggregate filing fee paid in connection with such Unsold Securities was \$5,510 (based on the filing fee rate in effect at the time of the filing of the Prior Registration Statement) and will continue to be applied to the Unsold Securities that are being carried forward to this registration statement. No additional filing fee is due with respect to the Unsold Securities carried forward in this registration statement. To the extent that, after the filing date hereof and prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement, the Registrant sells any Unsold Securities pursuant to the Prior Registration Statement, the Registrant will identify in a pre-effective amendment to this registration statement the updated amount of Unsold Securities from the Prior Registration Statement to be included in this registration statement pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) and the updated amount of new securities to be registered on this registration statement, if any. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6), the offering of securities under the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this registration statement.

---

